The Ministry of Planning and National Development

Kenya National Bureau of Statistics

2004/05 KENYA INTEGRATED HOUSEHOLD BUDGET SURVEY

INTERVIEWER’S MANUAL
CHAPTER ONE: INTRODUCTION ................................................................. 4
  1.0 Background ................................................................................. 4
  1.1 Main objectives of the survey .................................................. 4
CHAPTER TWO: DESCRIPTION OF THE SURVEY ..................................... 5
  2.1 Survey description .................................................................... 5
  2.2 Survey Team organization ....................................................... 7
  2.3 Data collection methodology ................................................... 8
  2.4 Organization and quality control of field operations ................. 9
  2.5 Inclusion in the survey .............................................................. 9
  2.6 Exclusion in the survey ............................................................. 10
  2.7 Coverage rules ....................................................................... 10
CHAPTER THREE: COMPLETION OF THE HOUSEHOLD QUESTIONNAIRE... 11
  3.1 Questionnaire translation ......................................................... 11
  3.2 Questionnaire formatting ......................................................... 12
  3.3 Questionnaire administration .................................................. 12
  3.4 Field team interactions with the community ............................. 13
  3.5 Interviewer interactions with the respondents ......................... 13
  3.6 General instructions for completing the questionnaire .............. 14
CHAPTER FOUR: HOUSEHOLD QUESTIONNAIRE SECTIONS .................... 17
  4.1 Questionnaire sections ............................................................. 17
  4.2 Introduction to Household ....................................................... 18
CHAPTER FIVE: INDIVIDUAL SECTIONS .................................................. 18
  5.1 Section A: Red Tape Information ............................................. 18
  5.2 SECTION B: HOUSEHOLD ROSTER ........................................... 20
  5.3 SECTION C: EDUCATION ............................................................ 23
  5.4 SECTION D: HEALTH ................................................................. 26
  5.5 SECTION E: LABOUR ................................................................. 31
  5.6 SECTION F: CHILD HEALTH AND ANTHROPOMETRY .................. 38
  5.7 SECTION G: HOUSING ............................................................... 42
  5.8 SECTION H: WATER, SANITATION & ENERGY ......................... 47
  5.9 SECTION I: CONSUMPTION OF FOODS ITEMS OVER THE LAST 7 DAYS 50
  5.10 SECTION J: CONSUMPTION OF REGULAR NON-FOODS ITEMS LAST ONE MONTH 53
  5.11 SECTION K: CONSUMPTION OF FREQUENT DURABLE ITEMS LAST ONE MONTH 54
  5.12 SECTION L: CONSUMPTION DURABLE ITEMS LAST ONE MONTH .... 55
  5.13 SECTION M: CONSUMPTION OF INFREQUENT DURABLE ITEMS .... 56
  5.14 SECTION N: AGRICULTURE HOLDING ...................................... 58
  5.15 SECTION O: AGRICULTURE OUTPUT ...................................... 64
  5.16 SECTION P: LIVESTOCK ............................................................ 67
  5.17 SECTION Q: HOUSEHOLD ENTERPRISES .................................. 69
  5.18 SECTION R: TRANSFERS ............................................................ 72
  5.19 SECTION S: OTHER INCOME .................................................... 74
  5.20 SECTION T: RECENT SHOCKS TO HOUSEHOLD WELFARE ........... 75
  5.21 SECTION U: CREDIT ................................................................. 77
Appendix I .......................................................................................... 80
GPS coordinates .................................................................................. 80
Appendix II .......................................................................................... 82
District and Provincial Codes ................................................................ 82
Appendix III ......................................................................................................................................... 84
Calendar of Events .................................................................................................................................. 84
Appendix IV ............................................................................................................................................. 122
Measuring of Children ......................................................................................................................... 122
Appendix V ............................................................................................................................................. 124
Kenya National Occupational Classification Standard (KNOCS) ....................................................... 124
Appendix VI ............................................................................................................................................. 131
Classification Codes(ISIC REV III) ...................................................................................................... 131
CHAPTER ONE: INTRODUCTION

1.0 Background
There is a widespread commitment to the principle of evidence-based policy making in Kenya. The government’s “Economic Recovery Strategy for Wealth and Employment Creation” (ERS) provides a clear framework for national development and poverty reduction, which lays out the actions needed to set policies and monitor progress. The Government is very aware of the need for improved statistics to inform the design, implementation and eventual evaluation of various development programs for economic recovery and national development.

The Kenya National Bureau of Statistics (CBS) and other agencies providing statistics are facing rapidly increasing demand for statistical data to support these new efforts. However, statistics on poverty, consumption patterns, and living standards in Kenya are outdated, with the most recent being data for poverty from 1997 Welfare Monitoring Survey and consumption patterns from 1993/1994 Urban Household Budget Survey. Given these considerations, the Strategic Plan for the development of a national statistics system includes components aimed at addressing the need for new and appropriate data to monitor the progress of the implementation of national development goals.

A principal objective of the Strategic Plan is to design and conduct household surveys in an integrated framework that takes into consideration the timing of surveys and sampling design. By developing an integrated framework, the Strategic Plan emphasizes the dual goals of providing regular updates of key indicators to be monitored (e.g. measures of poverty and well-being, aspects of national accounts) and supplying specific data that would allow examination and evaluation of some specific programs and policies (e.g. impact of free primary education). The first stage of the framework entails the Integrated Household Budget Survey (IHBS) to be carried out over a period of 12 months. This survey is a key component of the Strategic Plan. Within the integrated framework for household surveys, the KIHBS 2004/05 will be the first component and one of the largest projects in scope. As such, timely and successful completion of this project will be critical for the overall success of the vision for household surveys in the Strategic Plan. The goals and overall vision of the KIHBS 2004/05 are outlined below.

1.1 Main objectives of the survey
The KIHBS 2004/05 is designed to provide numerous indicators and data needed to measure, monitor and analyze living standards and poverty in Kenya. The survey will be the main source of data in several spheres of interests. In addition to providing the indicators outlined below, additional over-arching survey objectives are to:

- Produce household survey results and data sets in a timely manner.
- Ensure that data and reports are disseminated widely so as to be useful to policy makers, program managers and analysts in government, non-governmental organization, and research institutes within and outside Kenya.
- Develop technical capacity of CBS staff to collect high-quality household data (including developing skills related to questionnaire design, sample design, data processing system, and analysis and dissemination activities).

1.1.1 Consumer Price Index (CPI)
The KIHBS 2004/05 survey will be the source of data to update the urban CPI and to establish a rural CPI. Specifically, it will establish the weights used to construct the consumer price index. The current CPI weights are outdated as they are based on the last urban Household Budget Survey (UHBS), which was conducted in October 1993. In addition, given that about 80 per cent of the Kenyan population resides in rural areas, it is imperative to expand the scope of the next round of HBS to cover rural areas.
This will help measure and monitor rural consumption and inflation, and assist in developing policy interventions for rural households.

### 1.1.2 Measurement and Monitoring of Poverty and Living Standards

The KIHBS 2004/05 will collect data on living standards, meeting needs outlined in the Economic Recovery Strategy (ERS) log frame, the Poverty Reduction Strategy (PRS) and the Millennium Development Goals (MDGs). The last welfare monitoring survey was undertaken in 1997 and there is therefore need for an updated welfare data and a new poverty baseline against which the success of future programs will be assessed.¹

### 1.1.3 National Accounts

The System of National Accounts is the best practice to monitor overall macroeconomic growth. The KIHBS 2004/05 will provide information required for the compilation of National Accounts statistics.² Specifically, a comprehensive estimate of household consumption can be derived from a household budget survey as it provides detailed information that can facilitate a systematic classification of consumption expenditure.

In addition to the above indicators, the survey will also provide information on other initiatives being undertaken, such as infrastructure investments, school feeding programs, pension and health insurance coverage to name but a few. Together these will provide the much needed data for policy relevant socio-economic analysis.

## CHAPTER TWO: DESCRIPTION OF THE SURVEY

### 2.1 Survey description

The Kenya Household Integrated Budget Survey (KIHBS) will be the baseline survey (the last one done nationally was in the early 1980s) designed to monitor on a regular basis and in an integrated way progress being made towards the improvement of welfare in the Kenyan society so as to monitor effects of economic policies and national development strategies on the well-being of society.

The interview of households in the KIHBS will be spread over a year. This is done so that analysts are able to take into account the different conditions that household’s experience, particularly farming households, in both the rainy season and in the dry season and prices. A combination of two methods (the personal interview method and the account book/diary method) will be used for different components of the questionnaire. For the first time, expenditure on food and other regular items will be captured using both methods in the same survey.

Three questionnaires will be administered during the survey period. One will focus on the household while the other two are on the community as a whole. The three relevant survey instruments that will be used are:

- The questionnaires:
- Household questionnaire
- Community questionnaire
- Market price questionnaire

¹ In addition to being outdated, the three previous WMS suffer from a number of problems in both sampling and questionnaire design. The KIHBS 2004/05 will be carefully designed, with input from international experts, on both fronts so as to provide a consumption expenditure aggregate using best-practice standards.

² In addition, the KIHBS 2004/05 will be an important component of the Input/Output analysis and Social Accounting Matrix being undertaken by CBS.
2.1.1 Household Questionnaire

The subject matter covered is as comprehensive as possible in part because welfare has many dimensions that need to be investigated. These include income and expenditure, assets, education, health and employment among others. In addition each aspect of household welfare and behavior cannot be properly understood on its own, but has to be placed within the context of the whole.

The household survey has over 21 inter-linked sections that include the following:

- Household characteristics
- Education
- Health
- Employment
- Child health and nutrition
- Housing
- Water, sanitation and energy use
- Food consumption
- Non-food consumption
- Durable goods ownership
- Agricultural production and sales
- Household economic enterprises
- Household transfers
- Income
- Recent shocks to household welfare
- Credit

Later in the manual, the specific sections of the household questionnaire will be reviewed in detail. This will be done to provide you with key information on the intent of the questions and, consequently, how you should handle any problems that might crop up in administering the questions to respondents.

2.1.2 Household Diary

This will be for a period of two weeks. Two types of diaries will be used. One diary will be exclusively for goods and services purchased by the household, while the other one will be for goods and services consumed by the household. A total of four diaries of each type will be used per household. Interviewers will visit households every other day to check on the filling of the diaries and assist where necessary. This is in addition to the four visits to pick and drop the diaries. This is because an accurate dairy is needed especially in the computation of the household consumption expenditure.

2.1.3 Community Questionnaire

A community questionnaire will be administered to a small group of knowledgeable members (a minimum of five of a representative community in each cluster selected for the survey. This questionnaire will be used to collect information that is applicable to all households residing in the community that best describes the characteristics of that community. The administration of the community questionnaire will be the responsibility of the field team leader. However, the interviewer and/or chief will assist the field team leader in the completion of the community questionnaires in the clusters in which one will work, for example, identifying knowledgeable individuals in each cluster/community who might serve as members of the group of informants to whom the community questionnaire will be administered.

2.1.4 Market Questionnaire

This will collect market prices and quantities to standardize community measures and units of purchase. A market price questionnaire will be administered for each cluster/community.
2.2 Survey Team organization

The Kenya Integrated Household Budget Survey (KIHBS) is being carried out by the Kenya National Bureau of Statistics. The KIHBS is designed to be nationally representative, that is, the information collected from the survey households will be used to estimate the characteristics of all households in Kenya.

2.2.1 Role of the Interviewer

The ultimate outcome of the survey depends on how the interviewer conducts the interview. It is important for an interviewer to be consistent in the way he phrases his questions to the respondent. In case a response is not clear or rather vague, the interviewer should ask or probe further. No mention of immediate benefits should be made to the respondent as this may prejudice the responses. It is expected that interviewers working in rural strata will need to change their place of residence within the stratum every two to three months. The clusters selected for enumeration in the rural strata are scattered across the rural clusters. In order to be able to quickly get to the particular cluster in which one is working every day, one needs to reside in a location within the cluster or very close to the cluster. Consequently, as an interviewer assigned to a rural stratum, one must be willing and able to move his/her place of residence regularly so that the quality of work does not suffer.

- The role of the interviewer includes the following:
- Locating structures and housing units in the sample Cluster which are assigned to him/her by the supervisor;
- Identifying all persons in each household and conducting interview with them;
- Carrying on the interviews in accordance with the procedures described in this manual;
- Editing the questionnaire: after completing an interview and ensuring that all questions are properly filled-in and that questions not meant to be filled in are completely clean and free of marks;
- Visiting again the households for which information on some members were not available at the first visit;
- Verifying questionnaires before handing them over to the supervisor and before leaving the locality.
- The interviewer should never correct a questionnaire, apart from minor errors, without asking the respondents the questions again. The interviewer should never copy information obtained during an interview on a new questionnaire.

2.2.2 Role of the Supervisor

The role of the field supervisor is three-fold:

*Interviewer supervision.* The field supervisor is responsible for making sure that interviewers are able to do their work properly – have the correct information and tools needed for the job. The field supervisor will be provided with a vehicle for transportation purposes.

*Reviewing and editing questionnaires completed by interviewers.* After the questionnaires for all survey households in a cluster are completed, the field supervisor will review all questionnaires that have been completed to make sure that there are no errors – a rigorous check for consistency must be done.

The field supervisor will regularly sit in on interview sessions with the sampled households to assess the quality of work in terms of asking and probing. Incomplete questionnaires (inconsistent responses) will be returned to the interviewer and, the interviewer will have to go back to the households to make the corrections.
Interviewing and completing the community questionnaire: The field supervisors will be responsible for the completion of the community questionnaire. One questionnaire will be completed for each cluster in which the household survey is administered – 1,343 community questionnaires in total. Although the community questionnaire completion is the responsibility of the field team leader, the interviewer should assist the field supervisor in this task, particularly given more detailed knowledge of the enumeration area.

Field logistics: The field supervisors will be responsible for arranging transport. They should be alerted to any problems you might encounter, whether concerning the administration of the survey itself or concerning your living and transport arrangements. The vehicles assigned to the supervisors are to be made available to facilitate the relocation of the interviewers as they move their residence from time to time as the survey year progresses. The KIHBS management team will assess the performance of the field supervisor primarily on the basis of the quality of the data that comes from each cluster and therefore expect the field supervisors to subject each household questionnaire to rigorous examination.

2.2.3 Role of the Zone Supervisor

The field supervisors will be under the supervision of zone supervisors who are permanent Kenya National Bureau of Statistics staff assigned to oversee the administration of the KIHBS. The zone supervisors will be resident in zonal centers. The zone supervisor is responsible both for the quality of the data which the interviewers and field supervisors provide and for the logistical arrangements. The zone supervisors will have vehicles and are expected to make frequent visits to both the interviewers and the field supervisors for whom they are responsible. They will receive the completed questionnaires from the field supervisors and subject them to an additional review. Those questionnaires that are incomplete or erroneous will be returned to the interviewer for correction. The zone supervisors will be responsible for making sure that all completed correct questionnaires are transported to Nairobi for data entry without delay in a timely fashion. The zone supervisors are also responsible for any work related issues that the interviewers or field supervisors’ encounter as they do their work.

2.2.4 Role of the National Management Team

Finally, at CBS headquarters in Nairobi, the national KIHBS management team will operate under the direct supervision of the Project Manager. The national household survey is a big project, and as such the CBS will recruit a Project Manager, to be responsible for the survey. The Project manager will work with the Core Staff Team, composed of a Technical Manager, a Data Manager, and an Administrative Manager. The Project Manager and all members of the Core Staff Team will be fully dedicated to the KIHBS during its three major phases – design, fielding and analysis. Administratively, the KIHBS management team is located within the CBS headquarters. The team will be responsible for the day-to-day activities related to the survey.

2.3 Data collection methodology

The survey will visit the 1,343 clusters over a period of 12 months. Seasonal variations will be captured by randomizing the visits to selected clusters within each district throughout the year. The 10 households selected in each cluster will be visited only once in the year, but the survey instruments will strive to capture the total annual consumption, expenditures and incomes of each household by a combining the factual observation of food consumption (and some other frequent expenses) with diaries during a two-week period and the purchases of other items by recall, with reference periods ranging from 3 to 12 months.

Work will be monitored by a field supervisor who will be responsible for two or three interviewers in neighboring survey areas. The KIHBS is a complex survey. The interviewer, is the critical foundation upon which a quality data set for use in analysis for decision making can be built. Consequently, CBS has
put in place a supervisory system to enable the field work get the support that is required to effectively carry out the survey with the survey households.

Before initiating its factual observation by diaries, food consumption over the past 7 days will also be inquired about by recall at the beginning of the survey. The combination of both methodologies intends to provide a much needed empirical basis for their comparison, and will be the basis for the formulation of simplified survey instruments in the future. Each cluster will be covered by one interviewer in approximately 3 weeks (including the two weeks of diaries,) according to the schematic schedule shown in Table 2. The interviewer will visit each household every other day, to verify the proper filling-up of diaries, and to apply the other sections of the questionnaire.

The randomization of visits to the clusters over the 12-month period of data collection ensures the proper capture of seasonal variations in average consumption and expenditures. However, the fact that food consumption will be observed at different times in different households will require special care in the analytic endeavors that require comparisons between households, particularly in poverty analysis.

2.4 Organization and quality control of field operations

Each interviewer will be expected to visit 17 clusters in the survey year, which implies that a minimum of 79 interviewers will be required, although the actual number will probably be higher because of cultural or administrative constrains (for instance, if each interviewer is required to work within a specific district). It is proposed to organize field operations on the basis of approximately 42 self-sufficient field teams, each composed of one team leader, two to three interviewers, one data entry operator and a driver. Materials include one vehicle and one laptop computer for each team, a Geographical Positioning System (GPS) device. The proposed team approach lends itself to the implementation of several procedures to ensure the quality of field operations, namely:

- Adequate and permanent communication between all team members, and between the field teams and the CBS Nairobi headquarters.
- Innovative use of GPS technology for supervision purposes. Besides the obvious analytic benefits of accurately pinpointing to the survey observations (dwellings, facilities, etc.,) tagging precise space and time coordinates to all relevant actions of the field staff can be used to implement a variety of monitoring measures.
- Frequent and close monitoring of the interviewers, by means of random checkup visits to the households and various other supervision measures implemented by the team leaders.
- Integration of computer-based quality controls to field operations. The data on the questionnaires will be entered by the data entry operator onto a laptop computer, while the interviewers are still in the clusters, so that errors and inconsistencies can be solved by revisiting the households. In addition to the above quality control functions, built into the proposed scheme of self-sufficient field teams, the KIHBS will use the existing network of CBS District Statistical Officers (DSO’s) for various logistic and administrative purposes.

2.5 Inclusion in the survey

The Field Supervisor and other interviewers each will work in 1,343 pre-selected enumeration areas over the course of the survey period, one EA in each 21 day cycle. The KIHBS management team will have randomly selected ten of these eligible households in each EA to be interviewed. Broadly speaking, the households eligible for the survey comprise all people living in private dwellings in both urban and rural areas. However, the field personnel should note several exclusions to this rule in the next sub-section. As noted above, the ability to use the KIHBS to estimate characteristics for the population of Kenya as a whole is dependent on a random selection of survey households from lists of all eligible households in a survey EA. Within the selected households, information should be collected on all members in those sections where instructed to do so. Note, however, that in most sections of the household questionnaire, the respondents are restricted to certain categories of individuals based on age and/or sex. Moreover,
the head of household, assisted by other household members if necessary, should be asked questions that concern the household as a whole.

2.6 Exclusion in the survey
Members of the following households are not eligible for inclusion in the survey:
- All people who live outside the selected clusters, whether in urban or rural areas.
- All residents of dwellings other than private dwellings, such as prisons, hospitals and army barracks.
- Persons living in the streets or refugee camps or internal displaced persons.
- Members of the Kenyan armed forces who reside within a military base. (If such individuals reside in private dwellings off the base, however, they should be included among the households eligible for random selection for the survey).
- Non-Kenyan diplomats, diplomatic staff, and members of their households.
- (However, note that non-Kenyan residents who are not diplomats or diplomatic staff and are resident in private dwellings are eligible for inclusion in the survey. The survey is not restricted to Kenyan citizens alone).
- Non-Kenyan tourists and others holidaying in Kenya

2.7 Coverage rules
The coverage rules are largely related to the definition of household.

A household is:
- A person or a group of people living in the same compound (fenced or unfenced)
- Answerable to the same head
- Sharing a common source of food and/or income as a single unit in the sense that they have common housekeeping arrangements (that is, share or are supported by a common budget).

It is important to note the three elements of this definition namely: do they live in the same compound? Are they answerable to the same and one head? Do they share a common source of food and/or income? If any of the responses is NO, then this is not one household but several. It is possible that individuals who are not members of the household may be residing with the household at the time of the survey. In most cases, but not all, someone who does not regularly live with the household during the survey period, based on some criterion (i.e. how many months has member lived in the household) is not a current member of the household.

The definition of who is and who is not a household member is given below. It is important to recognize that members of a household need not necessarily be related by blood or by marriage. On the other hand, not all those who are related and are living in the same compound or dwelling are necessarily members of the same household. Two brothers who live in the same dwelling with their own wives and children may or may not form a common housekeeping arrangement. If they do not, they should be considered separate households.

One should make a distinction between family and household. The first reflects social relationships, blood descent, and marriage. The second is used here to identify an economic unit. While families and households are often the same, this is not necessarily the case. You must be cautious and use the criteria provided on household membership to determine which individuals make up a particular household. In the case of polygamous unions and extended family systems, household members are distributed over two or more dwellings. If these dwelling units are in the same compound or nearby (but necessarily within the same EA) and they have a common housekeeping arrangement with a common household budget, the residents of these separate dwelling units should be treated as one household.
The head of household is the person commonly regarded by the household members as their head. The head would usually be the main income earner and decision maker for the household, but you should accept the decision of the household members as to who is their head. There must be one and only one head in the household. If more than one individual in a potential household claims headship or if individuals within a potential household give conflicting statements as to who is the head of household, it is very likely that you are dealing with two or more households, rather than one. In such cases, it is extremely important that you apply the criteria provided to delimit membership in the survey household. Having identified a social unit that shares a common housekeeping arrangement – that is, a household – it then becomes necessary to determine who is and who is not a member of that household. After listing all potential household members (question B02), in order to determine which of these individuals are household members, the KIHBS uses information on how many months during the past 12 months a potential household member has been away from the household (question B07). Those individuals who have been absent from the household for more than 9 months during the past 12 months – that is, have been resident in the household for less than 3 of the past 12 months – should not be considered household members.

However, there are several exceptions to this rule:
- Young infants less than 3 months old.
- New spouses who have recently come into the household and are now residing with the household.
- Household members residing in an institution elsewhere, but still dependent on the household. This principally includes boarding school students. However, it does not include military personnel, prisoners, or other individuals who are not primarily dependent on the household for their welfare.

It is important to highlight that non-relatives who are resident in the household for more than three months are included in a common household keeping arrangement under the head of household and are considered household members. However, servants, other hired workers, and lodgers (individuals who pay to reside in the dwelling of the household) should not be considered to be household members if they have their own household elsewhere which they head or upon which they are dependent.

One should be very careful when dealing with this rather complex task of determining who should be included and who should not be included as a member of a survey household. The carefully check rules laid out above and in Section B of the household questionnaire must be consistent. The rules should enable handling the vast majority of household situations encountered, but not all. If in doubt initially as to whether to include a household among the list of eligible households in a cluster, discuss the problem with the field supervisor. Likewise, once the 10 survey households have been selected to be interviewed in a cluster, if unsure whether an individual should be included in a survey household, discuss the problem with the field supervisor.

CHAPTER THREE: COMPLETION OF THE HOUSEHOLD QUESTIONNAIRE

This section will examine each section of the household questionnaire in turn in order to address possible problematic issues relating to each. These notes here should be your first reference as you encounter any problems in administering any sections or questions in the household questionnaire.

3.1 Questionnaire translation
Most of the households to whom you will administer this questionnaire will not be able to respond to the questions if they are asked in English. The questionnaire has been translated into the twelve main languages of Kenya to allow the questionnaire to be administered in a language that the survey household members understand fluently. If you find that you have been assigned to conduct KIHBS
interviews in an area in which most survey households are only fluent in a language in which you are not fluent, you must immediately inform your field supervisor.

3.2 Questionnaire formatting
The household questionnaire has been designed to enable you to administer it with as little difficulty as possible.

The questionnaire is laid out in landscape (horizontal) format. Information on a particular individual within the household is to be recorded consistently on the same row of each section in which information on individual household member is to be collected. This is an extremely important instruction for you to follow in completing the questionnaire. An ID code is assigned to each individual in the household in Section B (Household Roster) depending on which row is used to record the presence of the individual in the household. This same ID code and row should be used for that same individual in all subsequent sections.

In order to facilitate your doing so, the household questionnaire has a fold-out flap pasted to the inside back cover of the questionnaire. On this flap is a table in which you are to record the name, age, and sex of each household member – a simplified household roster. The 12 rows of this table correspond to the 12 rows that appear in all sections in which information on individual household members is collected. When you fold out this flap, the rows of the table on it should align quite closely with the rows of the sections in the questionnaire.

A consistent coding for the same response types is used throughout the questionnaire. This means, for example, that for the coding of time units, ‘minutes’ will always be coded as ‘1’, ‘hours’ as ‘2’, ‘days’ as ‘3’, and so on. It is important to note, however, that where certain codes are not relevant in response to a question, the coding scheme for that question will not include some of the codes.

3.3 Questionnaire administration
Before you go to a selected household, you should ensure that you are ready to begin the interview – that is, you are presentable, that you know how you are going to begin the interview, that you have at least two ball point pens and at least two household questionnaire forms with you for every household that you plan to interview (in the event that there are more than 12 household members), and that you have the location and code numbers of the survey households with you.

The sections in the questionnaire are organized by placing at the front of the questionnaire the sections to which the majority of household members need to respond. The sections later in the questionnaire typically only require the household head and other adults selected in the household as respondents.
The setting of the questionnaire administration should be relatively private. Some of the questions being asked are of a personal and private nature. You should respect the desire of the respondents for privacy. This is important particularly when talking about health matters, as well as the safety and security section.

No person except your field supervisor, zone supervisor, or people from the KIHBS management team should come with you when you interview. If a KIHBS staff member does accompany you to an interview, you should always be sure to introduce the staff member to the respondent, making clear to the respondent the purpose of the presence of the KIHBS staff member. In most cases, the KIHBS staff will be present to monitor the quality of your own work and to support and assist you in effectively carrying out your assigned tasks.

Any other persons not connected to the KIHBS or to the household should not be present when you are administering the household questionnaire. If any such individuals are present when you begin your interviews, you must politely request them to leave in order to respect the privacy of the survey household. If they cannot leave at that time, you should schedule the interview for a later time or move to a more appropriate place, when or where greater privacy can be assured.

Questions are directed to those aged 10 years and older. Each person aged 10 years or older needs to be asked questions directly. If you need to collect information on younger children, you should interview them together with their mother or guardian. Do not try to obtain data directly from young children. Also do not ask young children questions concerning other household members.

As a general point, if you encounter a different or unusual case in a particular section or sections for a survey household and are not sure what to do, write all of the details down on the questionnaire. There is plenty of space on the empty page above each page of the questionnaire to do so.

3.4 Field team interactions with the community
Interviewers will be administering the questionnaire to 10 households in a cluster each cycle. As each field team will be working intensively for three weeks with community members in carrying out the survey, it is vital that field teams establish a good working relationship with community leaders and, for that matter, with all community members; Village elders, chiefs, cluster guides and DSOs.

3.5 Interviewer interactions with the respondents
The KIHBS is being conducted under the Statistics Act, and you are therefore empowered to collect this information from the respondents. However, the policy of the CBS is always to attempt to collect the information it requires with the willing cooperation of the public. You should therefore always be courteous and tactful in your dealings with respondents.

Above all, your attitude towards the respondents in the survey households must be one of respect. You must always patient towards survey household members. Always act in a way that warrants respect and cooperation from the respondent. During your interviews, you should work efficiently and relatively quickly, but should not rush the respondents or make mistakes. After each interview you should thank each interviewee for their help and time. This is vital if the survey is to be carried out successfully.

Be willing to answer any questions the respondents ask you about the survey and its particular contents. In most cases, the statement on page 3 of the household questionnaire will provide a sufficient response. However, please refer to chapter 1 of this document as well.

At the start of the interview, you should always determine if the respondent has any appointments in the next hour or two. If sufficient time is available to complete several sections of the questionnaire before the respondent’s appointment elsewhere, proceed and complete as much of the interview as possible. When the respondent must leave, arrange for another meeting in the next day or two at which the interview with the individual respondent can be completed.
Moreover, you should seek to develop a smooth-flowing interviewing style so that you can obtain all of the information required from an individual in the shortest possible time. The guidelines in this manual should help you considerably. You should attempt a compromise between:

- maintaining a smooth-flowing, continuous dialogue that allows you to obtain all of the information required in the shortest possible time – that is, without testing the patience of the respondents by delaying the interview in any way – and
- allowing the respondents to ask any questions that they have about the survey so that they are convinced of its value and are cooperative.

At all stages of the interviews with members of a survey household, you should be alert to errors. These can be accidental or deliberate. For example, if the respondent says that the household has no livestock and there are chickens pecking at your feet or goats tied up nearby, you should inquire about these animals. However, you should not probe excessively after seeking initial clarification from the respondent. In any case, you should never go outside of the household to get information. This is beyond the scope of your work.

Disciplinary action will be taken against any interviewers who consistently treat their respondents with condescension and a lack of respect or who shows a pattern of re-interpreting the answers provided by the respondents.

In summary, the general rules on conduct for interviewers are:

- Read the questions clearly according to descriptions and don’t be too fast.
- Read questions without adding reducing or changing. If respondent doesn’t understand repeat the question slowly, don’t explain by your own words.
- Don’t change the chronological questions (deviation can change the answer).
- Don’t pass a question due to previous answers or since you know the answer.
- Don’t show your respondent that you are in hurry or tired. Give them time to think on their response.
- Avoid long discussions of the questions with the respondents. If you are receiving irrelevant or complicated answers, listen to the respondent and then lead him back to the original question.
- It is extremely important that you should remain absolutely NEUTRAL about the subject of the interview. You must not show any surprise, approval or disapproval about the answers given by the respondent, and you must not tell him/her what you think about these things yourself.
- Follow exactly the questions’ instructions like skips, brackets etc.

3.6 General instructions for completing the questionnaire

In this sub-section, basic instructions are provided on how you are to complete the questionnaire. For many of the points raised, this section will restate what was said before. However, this section should provide a useful, condensed set of general instructions for you to use as you carry out your work.

3.6.1 How to read the questions

Read the questions exactly as they are written in the questionnaire, following the established order. You should refer to the fold-out list of household members in order to verify the age of the individuals for sections that only apply to individuals within a certain age range. Closely follow the instructions of each section when asking the questions.

After reading a question once in a clear and comprehensible manner, you should await the response. If the respondent does not answer in the reasonable time, he has probably 1) not heard the question; or 2) not
understood the question; or 3) does not know the answer. In any case, if there is no answer, repeat the question. If there is still no reply, you must ask whether the question has been understood. If the answer is 'No', you may reword the question. If the difficulty lies in finding the right answer, you should help the respondent to consider his/her reply.

3.6.2 Format of the questionnaire
The household questionnaire sections are organized according to two basic formats.

**Columns (vertical)**
In this format, the text area, the response categories and the response to each question are found organized sequentially in columns. An example of this is found in Section G: Housing, where only one response is needed for information covering the entire household.

**Columns and rows**
This format is used when there is information from multiple respondents in a single section. In this format, the questions are located in the columns and the responses are recorded in the rows. An example of this format is found in Section C: Education, where the responses from all household members are recorded on individual rows for the same questions.

**Format of the questions**
The questions are divided in three parts as described and shown in the figure below:

**Text area**
This is the area where the text of the question is found. All of the questions are written as they are to be read to the respondents. Interviewers should not ask the questions according to their own criteria, except in situations where the respondent does not understand the question. In such situations, you must explain the content without changing the sense of the question. This is important to ensure that all respondents are answering the same questions.

**Response categories and codes area**
This is the part of the question where the text of the response categories and their corresponding codes appear.

**Response area**
The responses received to the questions are recorded in this area. The responses should be recorded in the correct row corresponding to the respondent.

3.6.3 Types of questions
There are three types of questions included in the survey.

1. **Interviewer does not read the question to the respondent.** Rather, you record information based on observation or on previous responses provided by the respondent.

2. **Interviewer reads the question only.** These questions are read to the respondents, after which you pause to wait for the response. The answers may be pre-coded, or you may have to write in a response to be coded later by the coders.

3. **Interviewer reads the question and the response categories.**
3.6.4 How to record responses
The responses received from the respondents should be written on the questionnaire in *blue or black biro pen*. Responses written in pencil can easily become smudged and difficult for the coders and key entry personnel to read and interpret.

Responses should be written clearly in upper-case letters. This instruction is especially important for those questions that will be coded later, such as occupation and industry.

3.6.5 How to correct mistakes
If a mistake is made in the recording of a response, *do not erase* the incorrect response. As you should be using a pen, you will be unable to erase. Rather, double strike out the error by neatly marking it through with 2 lines, and then write the correct response where it can be easily read:

```
6    5
```

3.6.6 The “other” category
In order to include all possible responses that may be provided, many questions include a response option of “other” to record responses that are not covered by any of the pre-coded responses. When you use this code, also provide a brief explanation of the category.

```
5 DEAF/MUTE
```

3.6.7 Historical events and ages
Several of the questions in the questionnaire require information on the age of respondents, assets, or other items, as well as some dates. Many respondents will find it difficult to remember such ages and dates. One way to overcome this problem is to use calendar of events in Appendix III to help the respondent remember a commonly known event that occurred at about the same time as the individual was born (in the case of the age of a person), an item was acquired, or whatever the age-related question may be.

3.6.8 Absence of information or response
All questions that are not answered because of the skip pattern or general flow of the questionnaire should be left blank – no information should be recorded.

However, there are cases where respondents will not answer an individual question, either because they do not know the answer or because they refuse to answer the question. If after asking the question several times, you still cannot get a response, the following codes should be recorded:

- Refuse to answer .............. NR
- Do not know..................... DK

However, you should use these codes very rarely.

3.6.9 Flows and skips
In order to have a logical order to filling in the questionnaire, it has been designed with a system of skips that allows you to follow the logical sequence of questions based on responses to questions already provided.

If there are no additional instructions, you pass directly to the next question. The double arrow symbol “>>>” indicates that the interview should be continued with the question indicated. In the following example, if the respondent says ‘Yes’, you do not continue with question...
C11, but, rather, skip to C12. C11 is skipped because the question is not relevant to those who answer ‘Yes’ to question C10.

The double arrow symbol can also indicate that you should skip the remaining questions in the section and go on to the next section with the respondent. In the following example, if the respondent has never attended school, after getting the reasons why the respondent never went to school, you skip the rest of the education section because the respondent would have no responses to the rest of the questions.

3.6.10 Coding
The questionnaire is entirely pre-coded except in cases when a description in addition to a code should be recorded. Where the question responses are pre-coded, you simply record the code for the category that matches the respondent’s response most closely. If the answer is an amount or a figure, write the amount in the box below the question.

When the response to be recorded is a monetary amount or a figure, write the correct response in the corresponding cell. Record monetary amounts in Kenya shillings with no decimal point. Do not include cents. For any cents amounts, round to the nearest Kshs. For any amounts over Kshs 1,000, include a comma.

3.6.12 Write Clearly
When you need to write the name of a person, place or thing, always write very legibly in capital (BLOCK) letters. This instruction is particularly important for the household roster, because the names have to be put into the computer. It is also important to write clearly in capitals when the coding will be done in the office. If the answer cannot be read, the supervisor cannot code it.

3.6.13 Rounding off Numbers
When rounding up numbers, if there is no other instruction regarding recording decimals places, round up the reply. Thus,

\[
\begin{align*}
0.00 \text{ to } 0.49 &= 0 \\
0.50 \text{ to } 1.49 &= 1
\end{align*}
\]

CHAPTER FOUR: HOUSEHOLD QUESTIONNAIRE SECTIONS

4.1 Questionnaire sections
The household questionnaire is preferably to be administered to the head of household. If that cannot be done, another knowledgeable person may be interviewed. Some portions of the questionnaire however, will need to be answered by individual persons. Below are the topics covered in the questionnaire and the preferred respondents.

The main questionnaire is divided broadly into 18 sections as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SECTION</th>
<th>TOPIC</th>
<th>PREFERRED RESPONDENT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A.</td>
<td>Household identification</td>
<td>Head or spouse or individual</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B.</td>
<td>Household roster -</td>
<td>Head or spouse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C.</td>
<td>Education -</td>
<td>Head or spouse or individual</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>Health -</td>
<td>Individual person if aged 12 + years</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The above mentioned are preferred respondents for the various parts of the questionnaire but if the preferred respondents are not available - you have to find out when they are usually at home so that you interview them, or if it is still not possible, you interview some other knowledgeable person/s in the household. This will entail you to make more than one visit to a household in order to collect all the information required from the household members. It is, in fact, better to pay several visits to a household and collect correct information rather than to collect incomplete or inaccurate information in one single visit from a member of the household who does not have all the information. Make appointments for re-visits and ensure that you keep to the appointed times with the households while you continue enumerating other households.

4.2 Introduction to Household

The interviewer should read and comprehensively explain all of the contents of the paragraphs in the box to the head of the survey household, making sure to answer any questions that he or she might have. If the head of household is unwilling to proceed with the interview, please contact the field team leader as soon as possible. The field team leader should then talk to the household head to make an effort to obtain their cooperation.

The table of contents for the questionnaire will help interviewer quickly understand the questionnaire as well as survey content.

Special Remark Box allow the interviewer to note any special within the household that may need special attention e.g a HH of 20 persons living in a two roomed house.

CHAPTER FIVE: INDIVIDUAL SECTIONS

5.1 Section A: Red Tape Information

Respondent: Household head.

Purpose of the Section

This first section provides information to identify the household being interviewed. The field team leader will have, for identification purposes, a list of housing units and corresponding households to be interviewed. It is important to the success of the survey that the actual household being interviewed matches what appears in this sample list. Part of the identification information will be completed prior to the interview, part of it will be completed as the interview begins, and the rest will be completed at the end of the interview. All these must be clearly and accurately entered. This section is used to collect
information on the survey household in order to identify the household, if it is necessary, to re-interview the household members in the future and to identify the household for data analysis purposes.

The ‘Household serial’ box at upper right is for the use of the data entry staff. Simply leave this box blank. Otherwise fill in all the other information.

**Section A-1: Household identification**

Each interviewer will be given a Geographical Positioning System (GPS). This is used to give the precise location of the household within a cluster. These will be the co-ordinates north / south and east. Details on how to use a GPS are given in Appendix I .

**A01 to A06:** It is critical for later analysis that you adequately identify the location of the household you are interviewing. Please fill in A01 to A06 with the required information on the province, district, division, location, sub-location and cluster in which the household is located, noting the codes for each, as well as the names. The codes for the province and district are listed in the Appendix II. The field team leader will provide the cluster code. It should be borne in mind that all survey households within a cluster will have the same cluster code.

In some rare cases you will need to complete more than one main questionnaire per household. The main questionnaire is meant for one household (one questionnaire per household) and has provision for 12 members in total to be recorded on the questionnaire. If you come across a household with more than 12 members, continue on another questionnaire. Write down the same identification particulars as on the first questionnaire. In addition, if more than one questionnaire is used in the household, indicate in the space provided e.g. if two questionnaires are used on the first questionnaire fill in “1” of “2” and the second “2” of “2”.

**A07 and A08:** Household number and dwelling structure number are already given. Use list code information taken from the household and dwelling list and this will have been updated at the start of your work in the cluster. If members of the household reside in several dwellings, note here the code of the dwelling in which the household head resides.

**A09:** The language of interview will be coded here. This is the language used for interviewing the household. This may help in understanding any errors that the data analysts may come across due to the translation of the questions.

**A10:** The full name of the household head is necessary to accurately identify the survey household in the future, even in the absence of the interviewer or field team leader. The interviewer should explain this clearly to the household to avoid mistrust.

**A11:** Provides information on whether the originally selected household for the KIHBS was actually interviewed. In most cases, the interviewer will be able to interview the household originally selected.

**A12:** Should be used only if interviewer is unable to find the respondent after several attempts or if the household refuses to participate in the survey. Replacement of a household should be done in consultation with the headquarters.

**A13:** Reason for replacing household should be clearly identified. This will be done with the help of the field zone coordinator after a thorough investigation in case of a refusal. Code appropriately depending on the reason.

**Section A-2: Survey staff details**
A14 to A15: The interviewer’s name and code are recorded here. The interviewer should ensure that these details are provided in every questionnaire before submission.

A16: Please note here the date of the first interview for the household. Each time the household is visited, a date should be entered and the outcome of the interview stated. If during the first visit the interview is completed, then code 1 should be printed. If sections for the interview for the day were not completed, code 3.

A17 - A28: Details of other personnel who will be involved in processing the questionnaires are recorded here. This information is provided by the team leader, zonal co-ordinator and the data entry operator.
Special remarks/comments; record any unique/special details concerning the household.

5.2 SECTION B: HOUSEHOLD ROSTER

Respondent: Questions B01 – B07, B25: Household head or the most knowledgeable member of the HH;
Questions B18 – B25 apply to Individuals 10 years and older.

Purpose of Section
This section deals with general individual details of all household members. The household roster is where the membership of the household is determined. All potential members of the household are listed in B02 in this section. In listing members, list the names of all members of the household (see member definition below). The person listed in the first row will always be the head of the household. If the respondent to the questionnaire is not the head of the household, the head of the household will still be listed in the first row (not the respondent). If the head of the household is absent at the time of interview, he/she will still be listed in the first row. In writing the names of the household members, be sure that you uniquely identify the individuals. If two individuals in the household have the same name, ask about any nicknames or other ways in which the two persons can easily be distinguished from each other.

The process of listing household members should be done carefully to ensure that no one is missed. List the names of all members of your immediate or nuclear family (head of household, spouse/spouses and their children). List household head on the first line. Next, list all other persons related to the head of household or other household members. These include nephews, cousins grandchildren etc. Then list all non relative persons in the household who normally reside and have common eating arrangements such as live-in servants, friends. Finally list any other person who slept here last night. To ensure complete coverage, the interviewer should explicitly ask about three types of persons, who are commonly overlooked by survey respondents namely:
- Persons who are temporarily absent should be included.
- Persons who have come to stay in the household permanently are usual household members even if they have just moved in.
- Servants or lodgers/visitors; it is possible that these individuals are members of a separate household (see definition of household) that have been included during the listing exercise. If this is the case, they should not be included as members of the household being interviewed. If, on the other hand, there is no obvious indication that they belong to another household, then they should be included.
- Finally, the interviewer should ask whether there are any infants or small children who have not been listed, as very young children are often overlooked in counting of household members.
• As many as 12 persons can be listed; if there are more than 12 household members, the interviewer will need to use an extra questionnaire.

**Note the following:**
If a new member joins the household say a new born baby or bride in the first week, the individual will be put in the roster and insert an asterix to say they are new members. Similarly if a member leaves a household during the first week put an asterix against him/her e.g. death, marriage outside the home, divorce or moving to the city to look for employment.

**B02:** List the head of household on line one (ID code 1 in A10). The spouse(s) of the head with children should be listed next, followed by other relatives, ending with persons in the household who are not related to the head. Make sure that the person you list as head of household in Section B is the same person that is noted in A10 on the first page of the questionnaire.

**B03:** Ask the relationship of [Name] to the head of the household and use the codes provided. Only one person should be designated as the head.

**B04:** You must ask about the sex of the individual in B02. Do not use the name of the individual to assume the sex of that individual. However, some caution in asking this is important not to offend the respondent. Ascertain the sex of the infants and the children.

**B05:** Record the age of each person on the household roster in years if the person is more than 5 years. If 6 years or less, record the age in years and completed months, e.g. for someone who is 10 years, 10 months and 15 days his age is recorded 10 years while for someone who is 3 years, 10 months and 15 days, record the age as 3 years and 10 months. Do not round off the ages.

**B06:** Ask for the date of birth when the member was born. For older individuals who may have trouble determining the month and day of their birth, complete as much of B06 as you are able to. Try to make the best possible estimate. Please make use of the national calendar of events that begins in Appendix III to assist in determining the ages of such individuals. The Field Team leader should also be of help in determining the age of the elderly. If unknown, then simply estimate how old the respondent may be such that if day, month and year are unknown, code “98” for day, “98” for month and “9998” for year. If the age is not stated then code “99” for day, “99” for month and “9999” for year.

**How to use the historical calendar:**
Ask of any historical event (national or local) which occurred around the time of birth or childhood. Ask how old respondent was when that event occurred or how many years elapsed before his/her birth. Then use the information obtained to calculate the age. For example, if respondent was 15 when Kenya obtained independence, this person should be 15 + 41 (i.e. 12th Dec 1963 to 23rd Dec 2004) =56 years. If still this methodology fails try the next approach. Then select from district historical events, some events which occurred. Simply estimate how old the respondent may be. If day, month and year are unknown, code “98” for day, “98” for month and “9998” for year.

**B07:** This question asks for cumulative months of absence over the past 12 months. If the number of months is less than 10, then a leading zero should be put before the actual number, i.e. 04 for 4 months. For example, if an individual was absent once over a period of 3 months and again over another period of 1 month in the past 12 months, one should write 4.

Include portions of a month of absence in the calculations here. Include the portions in determining the total cumulative absence. For example, an individual who was away for one period of 6 weeks (1.5 months), another period of 3 weeks (0.75 months) and a third period of half a month, the total cumulative absence was 2.75 months – reported as 3 months.
In reporting the total cumulated absence that includes such portions, round down if the portion of a month is less than half, round up if it is over half. If exactly half, round up. For example, if an individual was absent in total for 3 months and
one week, report 3 months; if 3½ months, report 4 months; if 3 months and 3 weeks, report 4 months. In the previous example, where the total cumulative absence was 2.75 months, report 3 months.

It is on the basis of these cumulative months that household membership is determined. It is extremely important to verify that you have listed each household member in the correct row. Considerable error in data entry and analysis is possible if you do not do so.

B08: The interviewer fills without asking a respondent. This is the ID code of member who responded to the questions.

B09: Ask where [NAME] was mainly raised or brought up in his youth up to teenage. Ask where each member was born. This does not imply place where was born in terms of place of delivery but place where respondent was mainly raised/brought up.

Example, mothers can visit urban center to deliver child but return to village to raise child. It is the village that is where child was born and not the hospital in the urban center.

If a response code is 1-3 skip to B13.

B10: Note that B10, B11, and B12 are asked only of those individuals who have lived elsewhere prior to their present place of residence. The interviewer will record district or country of raised/brought up. The Team leader will then code appropriately Province and District identifier that are in Appendix II.

B11: Record the year in which the HH member moved to the district/country. If the person moved to this district more than once, then record the most recent return, e.g. Emma lives in Eldoret and she was born in Nakuru but moved to Eldoret when she was 15 years in 1989. Emma moved back to Nakuru when she was 20 years old and returned to Eldoret when she was 25 years old in 1999. In this case, B11 should be 1999.

B12: Asks reason for moving into district/country. The respondent may have several reasons but response should be the most important reason why the individual moved to his or her present residence. This question requires probing to get an accurate response. The response should reflect the reason for the move in B11.

**Note: For questions B13 to B16 ask household members who are age 30 years and below**

B13: Establish whether the biological father of [NAME] lives in the HH. If not, then probe to know whether he is alive or dead. If dead proceed to B14 otherwise skip to B15. Please note that the emphasis here is on the biological parent. However caution should be taken not to cause the respondent any embarrassment.

B14: Obtain the age in completed years of NAME when father died (not the age of the father).

B15: Establish whether the biological mother of [NAME] lives in the HH. If not probe to know whether she is alive or dead. If dead proceed to B16 otherwise skip to B17.

B16: Obtain the age of NAME in completed year when the mother died (not the age of the mother).

B17: Filter out all the household members who are less than 10 years. The following questions will be applicable for members aged 10 years and above is B18 to B25.

B18: Ask for the religion of the name and record appropriately.

In column B18, code the person's religious group i.e. “1” Catholics, “2” for Protestants, “4” for Muslims, etc.

**Catholics**

Those who believe in Catholic faith and recognize the Pope as the head of the Church.
Protestants
Group of churches which broke away from the Roman Catholic church e.g. Anglican Church of Kenya (ACK), Presbyterian, African Inland Church (AIC), Lutheran, Quakers, Methodists, Seventh Day Adventists (SDA) AND Baptists.

Other Christians
This category caters for Christians who are not covered under code “1” and code “2” above e.g. Legion Maria, Israel, Jehovah Witnesses, etc.

Muslims
Those who profess the Moslem faith and recognize Muhammed as the prophet of God.

Traditionalists
Those who believe in divine powers, e.g. dini ya Msambwa, Tent of the Living God, etc.

No religion
These are people who do not believe in the existence of super natural powers neither do they follow any particular religion.

B19: Asking for the marital status does not require that the relationship between man and woman be officially wedded. It can be a non-formal union that began without public ceremony of any sort. For persons simply living together, code “3”.
If Codes = 4 to 7 skip to B24. If however the HH has already provided information in B24, then you should not ask the respondent again information on B24.

B20: Ask if spouse/partner lives in the household.

B21: For men who have more than four wives resident in the household, you should make a bold note of this fact at the top of page 5, listing the ID code(s) of the additional wife/wives there. You should also highlight this fact to your field team leader.

B22: Ask respondent if they have spouse or partner living outside the household. Ask tactfully to avoid upsetting respondent, which may lead to interview being terminated. If NO, then skip to B24.

B23: Ask the number of spouses living outside the household.

B24: The household head or any responsible member of the household is to respond for all parents in the household who have children aged less than 15 years that do not live in the household. This question does not necessarily apply only to the head of household. However, he or she is responsible to answer it for all members of the household who are parents with children living elsewhere. This question seeks to establish the total number of children belonging to the members of the household who are aged less than 15 years that do not live in the HH. This does not exclude the children who are in boarding school.

5.3 SECTION C: EDUCATION

Respondent: Individuals 10 years old and older.

Purpose of section
The key educational indicators that are of interest are enrollment rates and drop out rates. The classification of an individual as a school-drop out is obtained by combining questions on school
attendance last year and current school attendance. Drop-outs are persons not currently attending school, were attending school the previous year, and have not completed their studies. Additional educational indicators include the highest grade completed, and the type of school attended (private or public). Information on the educational history of all household members aged 3 years and older is collected in this section. No information is collected from those under 3 years.

C02: Put a “1” for all individuals less than 3 years. This section will not be administered to these individuals. Enter a “2” for all the other individuals i.e. persons aged 3 years and above.

C03: Ever attended school is defined as attending school for a minimum of one term (3 months) regardless of whether or not any classes were completed. Individuals who only attended school for only one day or week should not be considered as attended school. Individuals who have just enrolled in school (their first term) should be recorded as YES. If the answer is NO, skip to C11 and ask the reason why NAME stopped or never attended school.

C04: To be recorded as completing a grade, the person must have actually finished the level in question. A person may have attended a class level, but not completed it. For all persons attending school this year the highest level completed should be one year lower than the highest level reached. And for persons not attending school this year the highest level completed may be the same as the highest level reached or one level below it, but not greater.

Examples:
- Someone who attended Standard 6 but never finished that class would be recorded as having completed Standard 5. Someone currently attending Form 3 would be recorded as having completed Form 2. Note that nursery/pre-school is given code 0. This is to allow Standard 1 to be coded as 1, Standard 2 as 2, etc.
- A zero (0) code is used to indicate two situations: a person whose highest grade is below standard 1 or someone who is attending Nursery.
- Older individuals may have attended school when the Kenyan educational system was different from what it is now. Indicate also the year when each household member completed the highest grade.

If the respondent did not attend formal school code ‘Other’ = 21 means non formal schooling system e.g. Nduksis, Madrassa, special school programme.

C05: Ask this question to all persons who respond to C04 to ascertain whether they have had any vocational training. If not, code 04 for none.

C06: If an individual sat an examination for an educational qualification, but did not pass, you should report the lower qualification he or she actually achieved. This captures the actual certification for completing an educational system level. Private institution diploma may include the Kenya Institute of Management, Strathmore College etc. For a student who does KCSE and repeats Form 4 the following year, the highest educational qualification is KCSE.

C07: This question asks age at first schooling. It can also determine whether an individual is currently repeating the same class they attended the previous academic year.

C08: Asks school attendance last school year. If NO, skip to C10.

C09: To be recorded as school grade-level last school year. Note that nursery/pre-school is given code 0. This is to allow Standard 1 to be coded as 1, Standard 2 as 2, etc.

C10: Asks current school attendance. If school is not in session at the time of the interview, ask about the session just completed. If YES, skip to C12.
C11: This question is asked for all persons who stopped school and those who never attended school. Record up to two reasons for stopping/never attending school. Put the most important reason (as defined by the respondent-not the interviewer) in the first column. If there is no second reason leave blank. It is important to probe and get accurate/clear responses. Skip to C16 after completing C11. For all individuals who are not now in school and were not in the previous 12 months, you skip to C24. For individuals who are not now in school, but did attend school within the previous 12 months, you must skip to C19 to collect educational expenditure information on these individuals. Skip to C24 if persons have never attended school or not currently at school.

C12: To be recorded as current school class-level. If a person is attending standard 8 currently, then code 8. If a person is attending his/her first year at the University code 15.
• Note that nursery/pre-school is given code 0. This is to allow Standard 1 to be coded as 1, Standard 2 as 2, etc.

C13: Ask the respondent “who runs/manages school NAME is attending?” The field Team Leader will have to familiarize himself or herself regarding the types of schools in the area, as some respondents may have difficulties in giving the information. The Team Leader can then assist in properly coding the type of organization from the name of the school. If a school is sponsored by say a church but the day today decisions are made by the Government code 1 but if the decisions are made by the church code 2. Do not however expend too much effort in determining exactly what type of school the individual attends. As noted earlier, unless there is obvious evidence to the contrary, you should take the respondent’s answers as sufficiently accurate.
• If the respondent does not understand the question, ask what the name of the school is. Typically the name of the school will give you enough information to determine what type of school it is. Assistance may also be sought from the nearest education office.

C14 and C15: The aim of these questions is to assess how diligently the student attends school. If the questionnaire is being administered during a school holiday and, in consequence, school was not in session over the past two weeks, the answers to both questions will be 0. For persons affected by strikes code ‘0’.

C16: This question helps determine who to include and exclude. It is a filter question and helps to ensure that only people who are in school or attending school last year are interviewed for education expenses. If C08=YES and/or C10=YES then code 1. If both are NO/blank, then Skip to C24.

C17: The question aims to collect information on how family events and circumstances over the past year may affect school attendance. Information on family events and circumstances is collected in other sections of the questionnaire, in particular Section T. If the response is NO, Skip to C19.

C18: Reason for non-school attendance should be recorded from the codes provided. Record the MAIN REASON as there could be several factors or problems that led to non-school attendance.

C19: The question aims at determining the cost of education on members of the household. The costs are itemized from A-L.
• Costs paid by other people outside the household should not be included here. For example, if an aunt living elsewhere helped to pay some of the fees or buy uniforms, then this should not be include in C19.

C19-A – This refers to fees charged and does not include any extra costs but only the required fees structure.
C19B – Includes costs on books, pens, calculators and other learning materials.
C19C – Includes physical education sports gear and shoes etc.
C19-D – Costs associated with students being in boarding school. This may normally include costs of meals and accommodation.
C19-E – Costs associated with transportation to school should be included here e.g. daily fares to commute to school for urban day scholar students.

C19-F – In determining the value of all contributions, be sure to include any in kind contributions – labor, materials, etc. In estimating in-kind payments, the respondent should estimate what he or she would have to pay for the item contributed if they purchased it in the market.

C19-G - This refers to the examinations paid in respect of the student.

C19-H – This refers to extra fees charged for private tuition either by school or individuals.

C19-I – The extra fees here include those additional fees that the teacher or headmaster requires parents to pay. An example of such fees are those which parents are often asked to pay in government schools to top-up the salaries of the teachers and headmaster in order to provide the instructors with a sufficient wage as an incentive to be diligent in their teaching duties.

C19-J – The money spent on shopping for personal effects of individuals going to school should be included as pocket money.

C19-K – All other expenses not elsewhere specified.

C19-L – If the individual respondent is unable to disaggregate educational expenses by categories, but can provide a total figure spent on educational expenses, this value should be written here. It is however important that interviewers probe to get estimates for each category of expenditure.

C20: This question refers to contributions from any person outside the household. It includes contributions from other family members and friends who do not live in the household.

C21: This question is aimed at getting the value of the assistance received. If the respondent is unable to estimate the value of assistance from other people (such as the value of books, uniform e.t.c), the interviewer should probe further. If there were several forms of assistance, the interviewer should use the back of the preceding page to write down each contribution and add it up on behalf of the respondent. Do not expect the respondent to add up all contributions mentally.

C22: This question refers to contributions towards school expenses. This includes the Government (bursaries/scholarships) or from other organizations in meeting the school expenses. If NO, skip to the next section.

C23: Aimed at getting the value of the bursary/scholarship. If the respondent is unable to estimate the value of assistance from other people (such as the value of books, uniform e.t.c), the interviewer should probe further. If there were several forms of assistance, the interviewer should use the back of the preceding page to write down each contribution and add it up on behalf of the respondent. Do not expect the respondent to add up all contributions mentally.

C24 – C25: The aim here is to record functional literacy (the ability to both read and write sentences and commonly available text, such as newspapers). Testing on ability to read and write will be done. The survey will not include rigorous testing of literacy. Interviewers will have to use their judgment and information from the respondent to assess each person. Literacy can be in any language, not just the main or official language, provided it is commonly used in a written form. Reading skill choices are 3. If a person can read well, code 3 and if can read partially code 2. If cannot read completely code 1. (Test should be applied to persons with below the Form 4 level of education and above 10 years old)

5.4 SECTION D: HEALTH

Respondent: Individuals 10 years old and older.

Purpose of Section
A key aspect of household welfare is the ability to seek and attain access to medical care when required. The survey will collect data on reasons for requiring medical attention, frequency of use of health

26
services, satisfaction with services provided, and in a later section, access to health services. In this section, information on both the recent and long-term health status of each household member is asked. Information should be collected on all members of the household. Information on the health condition of children should be provided by their mothers or guardians.

When questions in this section are asked, respondents will be asked to think of the last 4 weeks. A period of 4 weeks is easier to recall. Studies have shown that periods beyond 4 weeks there is a steep fall in recall.

It is important to specify ‘other’ for all questions whenever it is used.

**D02:** The interviewer will fill this in without asking the respondent. The ID NO. MUST be the same as in the household roster.

**D03:** This is an intuitive question and the respondents will respond as they please and the interviewer must accept the given response. The respondent should answer according to how she considers his/her health status without assigning an illness status on the respondent. If they report having no illness in the last 4 weeks but look visibly ill, you should nevertheless record them as having no illness. Moreover, even if they report, “I have not been ill, but I have had a fever” you should record them as having illness.

The interviewer MUST NOT question the health status of any household member even if they know the household situation.

**D04:** This question relates to whether the sickness/injury of NAME was work/occupational related?”. The respondent should indicate whether the sickness/injury in the last 4 weeks was as a result of the work/occupation he/she is engaged in (this includes self employment activities like farming or caring for livestock). Code 1 if Yes and 2 if NO.

**D05:** The question seeks to establish the type of sickness/injury the respondent suffered from in the last 4 weeks. The information is important for assessing the types of illnesses/injuries afflicting the population.

Note that there is space for recording information about two possible health problems that the individual may have suffered from over the past four weeks. For those individuals reporting more than one health problem, you must be consistent in recording information about the first problem which is the most severe (as defined by the respondent NOT the interviewer) in the ‘Problem 1’ columns and those about the second most severe problem in ‘Problem 2’.

Do not use the two columns to record multiple responses about a single health problem.

When in doubt or unsure about categorizing (coding) a condition, indicate at the bottom of the page some explanation or detail as needed

**D06:** Proper diagnosis of diseases is a prerequisite in receiving the right treatment.

If more than one individual diagnosed the medical problem, use the code for the one who has the most formal medical training and if two health professionals diagnosed the sickness/injury, report the one with the most formal training.

The list of options in the questionnaire shows the priority order – medical workers have more formal medical education or training than traditional healers. If both a medical worker at a health facility and a traditional healer diagnosed the illness, you should report the medical worker as having diagnosed the illness. If two persons diagnosed the problem and have no medical background, use the code of the one who first diagnosed the problem.

**D07:** The household’s welfare suffers whenever a member is unable to engage in his/her normal activities.
This question is meant to capture those persons who are (or were recently) sick or injured, and therefore unable to engage in their normal activities or work (housework, farm work, tending livestock, schooling e.t.c.)

Here the interviewer will determine the number of work or school days missed by the sick or injured person, in the previous four weeks (number of days as defined by the respondent-not the interviewer).

The interviewer should determine what the person’s main activity normally is (i.e. work, school, or caring for the family), and finally, whether the illness or injury prevented the person from performing that activity.

If the illness was minor enough not to prevent the person from working (or going to school, or caring for the family, etc), then the answer would be ZERO days.

Some respondents may not have any work (elderly, retired person), in this case code 99. However, most people do some sort of work (not limited to wage, work or school).

D08: This question is asked for all household members who were sick in the last 4 weeks to determine whether they consulted a health provider due to any of the problems reported in D05.

An affirmative response is recorded for the respondent who consulted a health provider for the sickness/injury identified in D05 in the last four weeks. The visit must have been in the last four weeks prior to the interview.

Examples: for a respondent who has been sick with asthma in the past 4 weeks and visited a doctor 2 months ago for asthma, the answer to D08 is NO. If on the other hand the respondent has been sick with diabetes in the past 4 weeks and visited the doctor one week ago for asthma(not reported in D05), then the answer to D08 is NO.

A health provider includes a doctor, nurse, pharmacist, health professional, dentist, or traditional healer or herbalist, a kiosk where you buy pain killers will also qualify as a health provider.

If a mother took her sick child to the doctor, the affirmative response will be recorded for the child, not the mother.

For persons who did not consult a health provider, the interviewer will skip to D11.

D09: This question is for those persons who sought advice or treatment from a health provider.

The interviewer will need to determine from the respondent in what type of place the provider was located. For example, if the person saw a doctor in a hospital, the interviewer will need to determine whether it was a private hospital or a public hospital.

The interviewer will record a maximum of 2 responses. This should be related to the type of disease(s) identified in D05.

If the respondent had no visit for the illness/injury 1, then leave PROBLEM 1 blank.

If the respondent visited more than one health provider, record the most important health provider (as defined by the respondent) visited for the illness/injury.

D10: This question refers to health providers (including those mentioned in D09). The interviewer will determine how many times the household member went to the health provider within the four weeks prior to interview, and record the appropriate number/figure.

If the respondent went to three health providers but only two are recorded in D09, then D10 should reflect visits to all the three providers.

As with D08, if a mother took her sick child to the doctor twice, the two visits will be recorded for the child, not the mother.

D11: This asks members whether they visited a health provider for any other reason other than illness/injury. Examples include pre-natal, medical check up and preventative consultation.

• If NO, skip to D13.

D12: This question is for those persons who visited a health provider despite not being sick. The interviewer will need to determine from the respondent in what type of place the provider was located.

For example, if the person saw a doctor in a hospital, the interviewer will need to determine whether it was a private hospital or a public hospital. The interviewer will record a maximum of 2 responses. If the respondent visited only one health provider code only one.
D13 to D18: These six questions capture extend of the burden of hospitalization

D13: Asks if a household member was hospitalized during the last 12 months in a medical facility. If NO, skip to D16.

D14: This question is aimed at determining if the members had to borrow money to pay for the hospitalization expenses at the medical facility.

D15: The aim is to determine if the members had to sell household assets so as to pay for the hospitalization expenses at the medical facility.

D16: Asks if household member had an overnight stay at a herbalist, traditional healers or faith healers place. If NO, skip to D19

D17: This question is aimed at determining if the members had to borrow money to pay for the hospitalization expenses at the traditional healer, herbalist or faith healer facility.

D18: The aim is to determine if the members had to sell household assets so as to pay for the hospitalization expenses at the traditional healer, herbalist or faith healer facility.

D19: This question includes both physical and mental disabilities and is meant to capture conditions, which are permanent. For example, someone who is temporarily disabled due to a broken leg would not be considered disabled.

Physical and mental disabilities to be considered here are those which prevent the person from maintaining a significant activity or schooling. This may be some physical impairment of limbs, a physical disease, or mental illness, which renders the person incapable of pursuing a significant activity. Note that this question will be asked of all household members. IF NO skip to D25.

D20: The purpose of the question is to find out if the respondent’s handicap is work-related i.e. is the handicap occurred as a result of the work the respondent does or was engaged in. If NO Skip to D24.

D21: This question is to be answered by all respondents who answered Yes in D20. The purpose of the question is to find out if respondents who get injured as a result of their work were compensated. If NO Skip to D24.

D22 to D23: The intent of the questions is to find out the schemes under which workers are compensated and how much they were paid for injuries.

D24: The question asks about the type of disability for each of the household members. Multiple responses are possible to reflect the possibility that an individual might suffer from more than one disability. A maximum of 3 responses are allowed for each member of the household and should be given by order of adversity.

D25 to D26: Applicable for persons aged 3 years and above.
The questions ask about the ease/difficulty with which a household member could sweep the floor or walk for a distance of 2 km on a flat path. If NO skip to D39.

D27 to D28: These are a series of questions related to chronic illness. Such illnesses are of relatively long duration, usually with a slow onset, with long-term negative effects on health. Chronic illnesses can be contrasted to acute illnesses, which come suddenly and, once cured, usually do not have long-term effects.
Space is provided in D28 to report more than one chronic illness. Usually a single chronic illness among several will be the more important, with the other illnesses resulting from the principal illness. This principal illness should be reported first. If the individual is suffering from more than two chronic illnesses, list the two most severe or most debilitating.

D29: Only allows space for reporting on the duration of time the individual has suffered from one chronic illness. Please report here on the principal chronic illness from which the individual is suffering.

D30: If more than one individual diagnosed the medical problem, report the one who has the most formal medical education or training. See the instructions for D06.

D31: Ask member if they slept under a mosquito bed net the previous night. IF NO skip to D33.

D32: Captures if the net has been treated or is just the un-treated net. Probe to get appropriate response as members may be unaware if mosquito net is treated or not. New treated nets do not need to be dipped in insecticide, as they come pre-dipped. Older nets should be dipped every six months. New untreated nets should also be dipped in insecticide after purchase.

D33: In this column mark all female respondents aged less than 12 years and over 49 years and all males with a “1” otherwise code 2.

D34 – D41: These questions are to be asked to all women aged 12 to 49 years. The questions deal with a subject that may be considered personal by some respondents. The questions must therefore be answered by each individual woman aged 12 to 49 years. It does not matter whether or not they are married, never married, divorced or separated.

Check column D33 and identify all those without a “1” marked against them. Make sure the entries are made in the correct ID number. For all women below 12 years and above 49 years and all males leave columns D34 to D41 blank.

D34: Ask each eligible woman if she has ever had a live birth. “A live birth is any birth that shows any signs of life”. Many women do not like answering questions about their children. Each interviewer must therefore be firm, polite and tactful. All the births refer to biological children only.

D35: For each eligible woman, ask “How many children have you born alive?” Record the number of males in the first column and all females in the second column.

D36: Ask every eligible woman “How many children have you borne alive who usually live in this household?” Record the number of males and females in the respective columns. Do not include children who live elsewhere.

D37: Ask every eligible woman “How many children have you borne alive who usually live elsewhere?” Record the number of children borne alive; males in the first column and females in the second column.

D38: Ask every eligible woman “How many children have you borne alive who have died?” Record the number of males and females who have died in the respective columns. ‘Still births’ and miscarriages MUST NOT be included.

D39: Ask every eligible woman “When was your last child born?” Record the month and year when the last child was born. Note: The last born child need not be alive at the time of the interview.
D40: Ask every eligible woman the sex of the last child (children) born.

D41: Ask every eligible woman whether the last born(s) is still alive

DEATHS IN THE HOUSEHOLD
It is important to remember the following points while administering this section:
These questions should be answered by the household head
If the answer is NO to question D 42 then move to the next section
Some respondents may avoid mentioning children who died at very young ages. In case of confusion
between live and still birth ask ‘did the child cry, move spontaneously, or show any signs of life for only
a few minutes/hours’. In case of each death ask for the cause of death and place of death.
The ID code numbers in the first column do not apply to these individuals since the people referred to
here are dead

D42: Ask the respondent: "In the last 12 months has any household member died?". Any other
responsible member of the household may answer the question. If the answer is NO go to the next
section.

D43: Ask the respondent the sex of the deceased. If more than one person then indicate each in the
given spaces as 1 or 2 for each.

D44: Ask the respondent the age of the deceased. Enter the age in months for all children who died
below age 5 years. For all other deceased person’s record the age in years. For old people who were
members of the household and died in the last 12 months and the head of the household does not know
their ages, ask for an estimate. You may also use the ‘calendar of events’ to estimate the ages. If more
than one person then indicate each in the given spaces, the age in correspondence to the 1 or 2 in D43.

D45: This question is intended to obtain information on the cause of death. For each death
registered in D43, ask for the cause of death and record the appropriate codes. A death certificate
normally has a reason/cause of death. Ask to see the death certificate if available.

D46: Ask for the place the deceased died. Code “1” if in a Health Facility, “2” at Home and “3”
Other.

5.5 SECTION E: LABOUR

PURPOSE: Section seeks to obtain information to update employment statistics.
Concepts and Definitions:

For the survey to serve its intended purpose and avoid data misinterpretation, it is important that
information collected refer to the same items or universe. To achieve this end, this section attempts to
explain concepts and unfamiliar terms used in the questionnaire sections E and Q, so that they are
understood uniformly and used consistently during the training, data collection, and analysis stages.
Below are common concepts and definitions.

1. Labour Force Framework: The survey and the subsequent analyses of its results will be based
on a labour force frame work; where total population is categorised into currently economically active
population (labour force) and population that is not currently economically active. Labour force or
"current economically active population" consists of those members of the population who are working
plus those who are not working, but are looking for work during a specified reference period. The
inactive population covers those members of the population who are NOT available for work
(economically inactive members include the infirm, ailing, incapacitated and full-time students). In most
countries the labour force population is taken to be aged between the ages 14 and 64. However, there is no upper age limit for this section. Also, the lower age limit has been lowered to include those aged 5 years and above so as to capture the extent and intensity of child labour in Kenya.

2. Economically Active: The activity principle of the labour force framework is based on the concept of production of goods and services falling under the production frontiers of the United Nations System of National Accounts (SNA). The concept covers those members of the population who are working or looking for work in activities related to market production and certain types of non-market production, as discussed in paragraph below.

3. Work: The concept of work covers all persons undertaking economic activities either for pay, profit or family gain. The concept of economic activity as described from the SNA, includes all market production and certain types of non-market production. These includes the production or processing of primary products for own consumption by the producers of these items; the production of fixed assets for own use; and the production for own consumption of other commodities by persons who also produce them for the market. There may be difficulty with the term work. In many local languages when a person is asked, “Do you work?”, it may mean “are you employed by someone else for pay”? This misunderstanding should be avoided, for the concept of work is broader than paid employment.

4. Job: A job is defined as set of tasks and duties, which are carried out by, or can be assigned to, one person. Two jobs are similar if they require the performance of similar sets of tasks, that is, if they involve the same type of work. It is related to the term work, e.g. job seekers are persons looking for work, or have applied for a job. It is also related to occupation, e.g. applicants for a driver’s job.

5. Employment: The term employment refers to performance of work as defined in paragraph 3 above. This term is used to measure the number of persons employed, including persons at work during a short reference period, and also persons temporarily absent from work but holding a job. There are different types of employment based on what is referred to as Status in Employment

6. Unemployed: Unemployed persons generally include those who during the reference period were without work but currently available for work, and actively seeking work. However, if currently available for work, persons without work who have made arrangements to take up paid employment or to undertake self-employment activity at a date subsequent to the reference period are to be considered as unemployed.

7. Reference Period: Since employment and unemployment are viewed as stock (measurement at a particular point in time) concepts, the corresponding statistics must, in principle, refer to a precise instant in time. The referring to a precise instant in time is called the reference period. Five reference periods are used in this section, last seven days, last four weeks, last month, last three months, and last twelve months.

Completing section E

Respondent: Employment questions are to be asked of all household members aged five and older; the interviewer is to put “1” against the member aged less than five years otherwise code “2”. The module should not be administered to those individuals coded “1”.

E02: This is to be filled in by the interviewer without asking the respondent.

E03: Asks what each household member was mainly doing during the past 7 days. The interviewer is to probe to get accurate responses in regard to the aspect that the respondent spent the most time doing.
Worked for pay includes all persons who worked for wages, salaries, commissions, tips, contracts and paid in kind (especially in rural areas where services rendered may be paid using food or clothing).

On leave: These are persons who are temporarily not working but still employed but are off-duty or on vacation. This includes teachers on school vacation.

Sick leave: Persons sick and on leave with permission.

Worked on own/family business: Comprises self-employed persons who worked on own businesses or persons who worked on family business for family gain and welfare. Includes ‘jua kali’ artisans, mechanics, traders of farm produce and family workers not on wage employment. However if family member working for pay, they should be classified as ‘worked for pay’.

Worked on own/family agricultural holding: A holding is the unit of land, farm or ‘shamba’ which is owned or rented by the family and is used for purposes of cultivation or rearing livestock for subsistence. All members working in holding without pay/profit must be included here.

Seeking work: The seeking work criteria is formulated in terms of active search for work (to seek paid or self-employment). A person must have taken specific steps in a specified recent period to obtain work in order to be considered as seeking work. A general declaration of being in search of work is not sufficient. This category should not include the under-employed (those who have paid work but wish to leave current employment for better opportunities). Persons with no work and looking for work fall under this category. But if family member working on holding but looking for work somewhere else, they should be coded as ‘5’.

Full-time student is one who is in regular educational institution and hence not available for work. They do not work at all but may help in household chores. However, if child does household chores, do not include as working. But if selling sweets, groundnuts etc to make a living then this child is not a full-time student but employed and must be coded under 4.

Retired: Person not engaged in any economic activity either due to age, medical reasons or voluntary out of work. However, if runs a business, he is not retired but must be coded under any of the other employment groups (codes ‘1’, ‘4’, ‘5’).

Incapacitated is one who is invalid and cannot work or do any activity. However, a person who is handicapped may not necessarily be coded here. Only and only if the handicap affects one’s economic way of life should incapacitation be coded.

Homemaker is anyone who is mainly involved in household chores such as cooking, laundry etc but may also undertake farm work and other activities.

NB: A paid domestic worker should be coded as having worked for pay and not as a home maker.

E04: The question refers to the main type of work the respondent was engaged in.

The status in employment refers to status of an economically active person with respect to his/her employment during a specific time-reference period. Two mutually exclusive employment status are paid employment and self-employment. Self-employment includes working employers, own-account workers and unpaid family workers. These terms are explained below:

Paid employees: They are persons working for a public or private employer and receive remuneration in wages, salary, commission, tips, and piece-rates or pay in kind. This comprises of persons at work and persons with a job but not at work.
Persons at work: Those who, during the reference period performed some work (i.e. at least one hour) for wage or salary, in cash or in kind; and

Persons with a job but not at work: Persons who, having already worked in their present job, were temporarily not at work during the reference period and had a formal attachment to their job.

Working Employers: Are those persons who, operate their own businesses, agricultural farms, or engage in pastoralist activities or engage independently in a profession or trade, and hire one or more employees. They may operate as sole entrepreneurs or with partner(s) who may or may not be members of the same family or household.

Own account workers: These are people who operate their own businesses, agricultural farms, or engage in pastoralist activities, or engage independently in a profession or trade and hire no employees. They may operate as sole entrepreneurs or with partner(s) who may or may not be members of the same family or household. This category covers a large proportion of self employed persons.

Unpaid family worker (contributing family workers): Persons who work without pay in an economic establishment operated by a related person.

Apprentice: The class of apprentices is included in this survey due to its significance in the local labour market. These are a particular type of trainees. They may be directly engaged in producing goods and services or may simply be learning by observation without actually performing any significant productive tasks. They may be paid a wage or salary under written or oral contract. Others may be given meals or living quarters or special tuition, in compensation for the work done or as an allowance unrelated to the work performed. Still others may not be paid at all and, in some cases, may actually be paying a fee in return for the acquired skill or knowledge.

The category “other” includes all those who cannot be included in any of the preceding categories.

E05 - E07: Hours of work are categorised into two types (a) usual/normal hours of work and (b) actual hours worked. The former refers to hours of work fixed by or in pursuance of laws or regulations, collective agreements or arbitral awards. Where not fixed by or in pursuance of laws or regulations, collective agreements, or arbitral awards, normal hours of work should be taken as meaning the number of hours per day or week in excess of which any time worked is remunerated at overtime rates or forms an exception to the rules or custom of the establishment relating to the classes of workers concerned. The latter concept relates to the actual number of hours worked during the reference period. For example, persons who normally work forty hours in a five-day working week but were off on Jamhuri day would be reported as working 32 hours that week even though they were paid for the holiday. Average hours of work may be computed from actual hours worked, say for a week or a month. If did not do task, write zero; less than 1/2 hour, write '0.5'; otherwise, round to nearest hour.

In this section one may be required to make some arithmetic calculations. If the respondent cannot remember the number of hours over the past 7 days, ask for the number of hours in one day and ask how many days the task was done. Then multiply the number of hours by the number of days to get the total number of hours for the last 7 days.

E08: Is filled in by the interviewer without asking the respondent. Read the instructions carefully as certain conditions must be fulfilled to code YES, i.e. member must have worked either for pay or in household or establishment to be coded YES. If YES, skip to E13.

E09: If member did not work in any activity, will the member return to a job or business or any activity. This is meant to capture persons who may not be working during the last 7 days i.e. persons on vacation/leave, sick, etc. but are employed. If YES, skip to E13.
E10: Ask reason for not working during the last 7 days. Only one reason for not working will be recorded; if there is more than one reason, the interviewer will record the main reason.

E11: The ‘seeking work’ criteria is formulated in terms of active search for work (to seek paid or self-employment). This question establishes whether those who indicated NO in E08 (neither currently working) and No in E09 (nor temporarily absent from work) had taken any action to look for employment. A person must have taken specific steps in a specified recent period to obtain work in order to be considered as seeking (looking for) work. A general declaration of being in search of work is not sufficient.

E12: This question seeks to filter out the people in the labor force. The interviewer should ask if the respondent is willing to work if offered a job. Probe to get an accurate response. Whatever the response for this respondent skip to E14.

E13: This question seeks for the number of income-generating activities that a member engages in during the past 7 days.

E14: Depending on their daily or weekly working hours, persons work either on full-time or part-time basis. Person captured in this question comprises;

- **Full-time workers:** Persons who work for all the hours of work and for all the working days, as defined by the employer, except when on leave or otherwise officially away.

- **Part-time workers:** Employees who voluntarily work fewer hours than is normal for the establishment, or division within it. The term includes only those part-time employees who are permanent employees; thus a person hired for three months part time is separately counted as a casual worker.

- **Regular workers:** There are regular workers for both paid employees and self-employed persons. For paid employees, regular workers are those with stable contracts for whom the employing organisation is responsible for payment of relevant taxes and social security contributions and/or where the contractual relationship is subject to prevailing labour regulations. For self-employed persons, regular workers are those who work in their own establishments or farms on a continuous basis.

- **Seasonal workers:** They are persons engaged in activities only for specific periods of the year, i.e. engaged in seasonal activities such as coffee picking, planting, tourism etc.

**NB:** Casual laborers are excluded here.

E15: The term occupation refers to the job held or the kind of work performed during the reference period (or kind of work done previously if unemployed) irrespective of the industry in which the individual works. Information on occupation provides a description of a person’s job. Persons with two or more jobs are classified in the job at which they worked the greatest number of hours during the reference period. Occupational codes and descriptions are given in Appendix V of the interviewer’s manual. They are based on the latest publication on occupations "Kenya National Occupational Classification Standards (KNOCS)".

The interviewer is to provide a brief description of the occupation of the individual. The main employed occupation over the past 12 months is either their only occupation or the occupation that the respondent worked the most hours, if the respondent worked at more than one job. For individuals with two occupations with the same number of hours, the main employed occupation is the one that gives the largest income. If equal in number of hours and income, the one that the respondent considers as his
or her main occupation should be noted. Examples: One can be a clerk in agricultural, building, transport, or any of a number of industries. Clerk is an occupation in that case.

Do not write in generic names such as secretary, office worker, day worker, etc. Write in a brief description of the occupation such as mechanic in an auto repair shop, carpenter’s assistant, plumber in construction, bilingual secretary, etc.

E16: Industry refers to the economic activity of the establishment in which an employed person worked during the survey reference period or last worked if unemployed. This activity is defined in terms the kinds of goods produced, or services offered by the economic unit or establishment in which the person works. The branch of economic activity of a person does not depend on ones occupation. Therefore, if a driver reports working in a factory producing suitcases and handbags, the activity would be considered as Manufacturing. It should also be pointed out that the terms "Industry" and "Economic Activity" are interchangeably used to mean the same thing. Industrial codes and their descriptions are given in Appendix VI of the interviewer’s manual. They were based on the 1990 edition of the UN International Standard Industrial Classification (ISIC-1990) of all economic activities.

This question is to determine the economic sector in which the respondent works. Write a description of what the establishment specializes/manufactures where the respondent worked. Do not write the exact name of the company or institutions, except for those individuals who work for government ministries or official or public organizations. Also, do not write a generic description such as 'workshop', 'industry', 'factory', etc, as these do not provide enough descriptive information. Provide a description of the place where the individual works, such as auto repair workshop, factory that makes leather shoes, sale of life insurance, etc.

E17: Each person who is working will be asked for whom they work for. The interviewer will then determine in what sector of the economy the person is working. Employment sector refers to whether the employment is public (governmental) or private (non-governmental).

The Public sector covers all activities and establishments of the Central Government, its statutory corporations (wholly owned corporations or parastatals), registered companies in which the Government is a majority shareholder, and all Local Government authorities.

The private sector is further categorized into private company or private individual (or household). An NGO is a non profit making body which mainly engages in charity work

Examples: Someone working as a clerk in the national bureau of statistics will be classified in central government. Someone working as a cleaner at the national bureau of statistics will also be classified in government. Someone who works as a cleaner at a privately owned company will be classified as working in a private sector company. Someone who works as a cleaning person in someone’s home will be classified in private household (Individual).

E18: Establishes the number of months the respondent worked in the last 12 months.

E19: Asks how many hours per day a household member worked in this occupation. This MUST exclude lunch or any other breaks. This refers to effective working time. Refer to section (E05-E07)

E20-E23: Income from paid employment or self-employment includes wages and salaries and other earnings received in cash and kind on regular basis. Earnings cover all payments, which employees receive in respect of their work, whether in cash or in kind, remuneration for time not worked paid by the employer (excluding severance and termination pay) and other benefits and allowances. Other benefits and allowances include bonuses and gratuities, medical allowances, housing and family allowances paid by the employer directly to his employee. Wages and salaries relating to a given period include remuneration for time worked including overtime, piece-work, bonuses, remunerate according to
the law for hours not worked (particularly holidays, sick leave and maternity), and extra payments for dirty, dangerous or unpleasant work and supplements for night work. Wages and salaries also include authors’ royalties and payments to workers giving apprenticeship courses or themselves receiving training. On the other hand, wages and salaries do not include exceptional bonuses, travel expenses, the cost of special clothing or footwear, and social insurance payments.

The information sought here refers to actual payment in main occupation last one month. Probe and give the appropriate figures in E20 to E23. If wage not yet paid give the expected remuneration.

Allowances and gratuities include allowances and per diems paid to business employees and civil servants for costs related to travel, fieldwork, workshops, and the like. The amount reported here should include hotel accommodation payments directly made by the employer on behalf of the employee, if any. In estimating the value of in-kind allowances or gratuities, the respondent should estimate what he or she would have to pay for the item received if they purchased it in the market.

E24:  **Casual workers:** These are persons for whom their terms of engagements provide for payment at the end of each day and who are not engaged for a period longer than 90 days. They have no formal employment contract with the employer and their services may be done away with without notice. Casual employees are generally engaged for manual work.

The question seeks for the members who did any casual work in the last 12 months. If the answer is NO, skip to E31 if the respondent is the HH or the most responsible person else skip to the next section/person.

E25:  Note that an estimate of the total days of casual work is all that is required for the last three months.

E26:  If the respondent is unable to compute an average daily wage they received for casual labor over the past 12 months, ask them to estimate how much they would expect to receive at the time of the interview if they did a day’s work of casual labor of the sort of casual most commonly done at that time of year. In estimating in-kind casual wages received, the respondent should estimate what he or she would have to pay for the item received as wages if they purchased it in the market.

E27:  Ask the respondent whether he or she is a member of a trade union or a member of a welfare association. The welfare associations are those which can negotiate for wage or salary increases.

E28:  Seeks information on the district where one works. Note that the district where one is working may not be the same as where one resides. Example: one may be living in Thika district but working in Nairobi district. Codes for the districts are provided.

E29:  The question seeks for information on how one travels to work. If two different modes are used, probe to find the main mode that is usually used.

E30:  Record the number of minutes on average that one spends while traveling to work during peak and off peak hours (one way). This should be the time from when one leaves the house to when one arrives in the office and includes waiting time.

E31:  Ask the household head or any responsible member of the household the number of domestic servants the household employs. This should include both residents and non-residents.

A domestic servant is the one who attends to employer’s personal needs and keeps wardrobe and personal effects in order. He/she carries out house cleaning duties and may or may not attend to children’s need. Examples: house-boy, house-girl, house help etc
5.6 SECTION F: CHILD HEALTH AND ANTHROPOMETRY

Respondent: Mothers or guardians of children 5 years (60 months) old and younger.

Purpose of Section
This section collects information related to health of children. Specific questions are asked on delivery care, breastfeeding, child nutrition, incidences of diarrhea, feeding practices during diarrhea and vaccinations.

The questions are asked for all children aged 0 to 60 months.

It is important to specify ‘other’ for all questions whenever it is used.

F02: This is a filter for individuals older than 60 months (5 years). This column should be filled by interviewer without asking the respondent.

Check to see whether the individual is aged more than 60 months (5 years). Mark a “1” against the ID code of this individual and skip to the next person/section. Else code 2 and administer the module.

F03: The intent of this question is to identify where one was delivered. For babies born neither at home nor at a health facility, there is room to record other places. Please, specify if ‘other’ coded. A health centre facility has provision for in patient services and has more qualified medical personnel. A health dispensary caters for out-patient only.

F04: Although a number of persons may have been in attendance at birth, this question is aimed at determining who the most qualified person in attendance was.

- A doctor, nurse, or midwife would have received formal training at a medical institution.
- A Traditional Birth Attendant (TBA) is one who assists the mother during childbirth. She may have acquired skills by delivering babies herself, or through apprenticeship from other TBAs.
- A Trained Traditional Birth Attendant (TTBA) is one who has undergone a training course conducted by the modern healthcare personnel.
- If family members, friends, relatives or other persons not related to mother were the only persons attending the birth, the interviewer will record ‘Other’.
- If the mother did not receive any assistance, i.e. delivered the child alone, the interviewer will record ‘Self’.

F05: Breastfeeding is important for fertility and child health. Note that for this particular question the period/length of breastfeeding is not important, only whether or not the child was given the breast to suckle. Ask the respondent if the child has ever been breastfed. If the response is NO, code 2 and skip to question F09. If even after probing the respondent says she/he does not know, code 8 for Don’t Know, and skip to F09 as well, however, all efforts should be made to get the answer to the question.

F06: The question seeks to establish whether the child is still breastfeeding. It does not matter whether the child is fed other liquids or foods as well.

F07: This question refers to the length of breastfeeding – number of months child breastfed. For those who are no longer breastfeeding, ask the mother/guardians how long they breastfed. It is important to try to get as accurate information as possible. Probe and urge the respondent to remember how old the child was when she/he completely stopped breastfeeding.

- Record the age in completed months the child was when the child stopped breastfeeding. For example, if the child stopped breastfeeding at 9 months and one week, record 9.
For children still breastfeeding, the interviewer need not pose the question to the respondent. The age of child in completed months will be equal to the length of breastfeeding. If the response is Don’t Know, code 98.

Probe and do not just take given number. Length of breastfeeding cannot be greater than age in months.

**F08:** Exclusive breast-feeding means feeding the child only breast milk. No additional liquids, solids or even water should be fed to the child. If the child received anything else other than breast milk, then that is not exclusive breastfeeding. Probe and do not just take given number. Exclusive breast-feeding must be equal to or less than the age of child.

**F09:** Code only one supplement. Use the following explanations as guidelines in recording the correct supplement.

- Commercial Infant Food/Formulas refers to products such as Nan, S26, Lactogen, cerelac e.t.c.
- Porridge is ordinary gruel made from millet, sorghum or maize.
- Fortified Porridge is enriched porridge with additives like milk, groundnut powder, ground fish (omena), and ground beans e.t.c.
- Semi solids include mashed food/fruit.
- Other refers to any other type of food not listed in the given codes. Please specify.
- N/A means ‘not applicable’ and should be coded where the child is still exclusively breastfeeding.

**F10:** A nutrition program is typically carried out by the local health worker or a community social worker. Nutrition programs will include the following:

- Food distribution to the child,
- Provision of meals to the child, organized through NGOs or other institutions among others.
- Resident feeding program: both the mother and child live at a centre for some time for further specialized feeding and get exposure on best feeding practices.

If guardian does not know, or is not aware, do not make conclusions. Make sure to probe and explain. If a child participated in a nutrition program, the interviewer should code “1”.

**F11:** A Growth Monitoring clinic is for children under-five years and is usually carried out at a local health facility. At these regularly scheduled clinics, the general health of infants and young children is assessed. The children are regularly weighed and measured. Immunizations (vaccinations) are also administered to the children. If a child participated in the growth-monitoring program, the interviewer will code “1”.

**F12:** A diarrhoea episode is defined:
- As three or more runny (loose or watery) stools per day,
- And/or blood in the stool on any day, or
- As defined by the mother
Note that the last 2 weeks refers to two weeks from the date of interview.

If NO, skip to F16.

**F13:** Action taken during a diarrhoea episode is critical to child survival. It also depicts the general awareness on what to action to take during diarrhea. Mothers/guardians may change the amount of fluids or food given while the child has diarrhea.

Ask the type of fluid and food given during diarrhoea and record only one fluid and one food. This should be what was given most frequently.

**F14:** Record the amounts for fluid and food given during diarrhoea compared to during non-diarrhoea period.
F15: Oral Rehydration Salts (ORS) is a treatment for diarrhea that consists of combining the contents of a small packet of powder (the ORS packet) with water. The packets are often available from health clinics, pharmacies and field workers. A home preparation of the same consists of a solution of sugar and salt mixture (Sugar, salt and water solution). If the child was given this solution, code 1 for YES.

F16: Ask the respondent for the health/vaccination card of the eligible child. In some cases the respondent may not be willing to take time to look for a health card. Encourage the respondent to look for the card. It is critical to obtain written document of the child’s immunization history; therefore be patient if the respondent needs to search for the card.

Once the vaccination card has been availed and you have seen it, code 1 for ‘YES, SEEN’. If the respondent says the child has a vaccination card but it is not shown to you because it is lost, someone else has it or it is not accessible during the interview period, record ‘YES, NOT SEEN’ for that child. If the respondent says the child has no card, code 3.

Take care to read the appropriate code and follow the correct skip pattern.

F17: The interviewer should fill in the dates from vaccination card. No any other source of dates should be used. Fill in the date first, then months and finally the year. For partial immunization record only what the child received. If the card shows only part of the date, Record 98 for DON’T KNOW in the column for which the information is not given (e.g. April 2005). If the card shows that vaccinations were given but there are no dates or only a tick is shown, Code 44 in the date column and leave the month and year column blank. Where dates are given, record the given date for the vaccination.

The following are some examples

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Entry on Health Card</th>
<th>Correct Entry in Q. F17</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>March 6, 2004</td>
<td>0 6 0 3 0 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 September 2000</td>
<td>1 0 0 9 0 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25/12/2003</td>
<td>2 5 1 2 0 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>April 2005</td>
<td>9 8 0 4 0 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Measles given (✓)</td>
<td>4 4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

After filling in the details from the card, skip to question F26.

F18-F25: These questions concern vaccinations for children without cards and thus F17 was not filled. This can be from mother/guardians’ memory or any responsible household member. Try as much as possible to get the information from the mother.

Read the introductory question F18 and follow the appropriate skip patterns. Notice that there are follow up questions for the Polio and DPT vaccinations. For the Polio vaccine, we ask whether the child received it, when the child received it and how many times the child received it. Similarly for DPT or DPT/HepB/Hib vaccination ask whether the child received it and how many times. Be careful to probe, as respondent may not be familiar with the different types of vaccines.

F18 – asks if child has received any vaccine? Explain what this means to respondent. If NO or don’t know, skip to F26.
F19 – asks about BCG vaccine.
F20 – asks about Polio vaccine. If NO or don’t know, skip to F23.
F21 – asks age at which first Polio vaccine was administered. This may be Polio at Birth or Polio 1.
F22 – asks how many more times the Polio was given. Record the number of times.
F23 – asks about DPT vaccine. If NO or don’t know, skip to F25.
F24 – asks how many times DPT(or DPT/HepB/Hib) was given. Record the number of times.
F25 – asks about measles.

F26: The question seeks to establish the effectiveness of the BCG vaccine. If it is effective, a scar will be left where the child had been vaccinated the BCG, usually on the left arm near the elbow. If the vaccine does not leave a scar, it implies that vaccination was not effective. Take care to distinguish the BCG scar from any other scar that may result from an accident etc. The interviewer should request to see the left arm of the child and code appropriately, it is not a must for you to touch the child’s arm.

F27: The column should be filled in by the interviewer without asking the respondent. The children to be measured are all those aged 6 to 60 month. If the child is less than 6 months code “1” and skip to next section else code 2 and proceed. This is derived from the Household Roster(Section B). For example, if the field team leader and you carry out the measurement of children on 23 March 2005, you should not measure any children whose date of birth was before 23 March 2000.

F28-F31: Information in the section permits the evaluation of nutritional status of children under the age of 60 months and the identification of subgroups of children that are at increased risk of growth problems and sickness incidence.

In this section the Interviewer, will measure the weight and height/length of all children aged 6 to 60 months – that is all children older than 5 months and younger than 61 months. The mother or guardian of the child also should assist in this task. The final question in the section is asked of the mother. None of the other questions require a respondent, as they involve measurements or require your input as the interviewer.

Detailed instructions for taking the measurements are provided starting on Appendix IV.

The child’s mother or guardian will assist you in particular by reassuring the child, so that accurate measurements can be made. The child needs to be as calm as possible when you are measuring him or her. Consequently, the mother or guardian should be nearby. The interviewer should speak politely and in a friendly manner with the children.

The interviewer should complete the measurements for one child at a time. If more than one child needs to be measured in the household, complete taking both the weight and the weight/length of one child before taking measurements on any other child. Children over 2 years of age will be measured standing up. Children under 2 years of age will be measured lying down. Height (or length, if lying down) will be measured in centimeters to one decimal place.

F28: Weight measurements will be carried out using an electronic scale. The electronic scale may require the mother/guardian and the child to be weighed together at the same time especially if the child is too young to stand on the scale alone.

Be sure that the mother or guardian understands what will be done to the child, i.e. explain to the mother or guardian how the child will be weighed. Be polite and answer any questions or that the mother or guardian might have. Make sure you explain how the child’s length or height will be measured.

Weight will be recorded in kilograms, to one decimal place (in the third column). Note that the decimal point is already printed in the cells for F28. For example, if the child weighs 10.5 Kgs, code 105. Weights
of less than 10 kilograms will be recorded with a leading zero; for example, 8.2 kilograms will be recorded as '08.2'. The last column represents the decimal place. If the child weighs 5 Kgs, then code 050.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Weight</th>
<th>Correct Entry</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10.5</td>
<td>1 0 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.2</td>
<td>0 8 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>0 5 0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

F29: You must indicate here whether the height/length of the child was measured with the child lying down or standing up. The interviewer will fill this without asking respondent.

F30: Lengths and heights should only be recorded in centimeters, recorded to the first decimal place (nearest millimeter). Note that the decimal point is already printed in the cells for F29.

Heights of less than 100 cms will be recorded with a leading zero; for example, 88.5 cms will be recorded as '088.5'.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Height</th>
<th>Correct Entry</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>88.5</td>
<td>0 8 8 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110</td>
<td>1 1 0 0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

F31: This question is only asked if it proved impossible to measure a child. The interviewer should only fill this question after the team leader has also tried at least on two separate occasions to measure the child. Even if the child is not measured, note that you should ask the mother or guardian questions concerning the child. Probe to get the exact reason. Only one main reason is needed.

5.7 SECTION G: HOUSING

**Respondent:** The Household head or the most informed member of the household and Interviewer’s own observation.

**Purpose of section**
This section deals with key housing conditions and services. Most of the questions that are posed in this section are easily observable and may therefore be tackled without posing the questions to the respondent. However, it should not be taken that such questions can just be tackled without reference to the respondent. The interviewer is always encouraged to check with the respondent.

For all questions with the option of others, it is important to specify.

**GO1:** The tenure status referred to in this section is about the occupancy status of the dwelling itself as opposed to ownership of the land on which it stands or security of tenure for that matter.
**Owner Occupier** – refers to a situation where a household owns the dwelling in which they live.

**Owner Occupied Nomad** – is a special category of ownership in the nomadic areas where the houses though owned are very temporary and sometimes movable.

Employer provided subsidised- refers to cases where the employer has provided the Household with a dwelling for which nominal rent charges are paid. Ideally the employer pays the rest of the money required.

For those households whose dwelling is provided at subsidised rates, Skip to G06.

**Employer provided free** - refers to a case where the dwelling is freely provided to the household without any observable direct or indirect cost. For such households, skip to G08.

**Rented** – refers to a case where the Household rents the dwelling either from an institution (public or private) or an individual. For all households who rent their dwellings, skip to G06.

**Free** – refers to a case where a Household resides in a house without any form of payment. For example a family may be living in a house provided by a relative and yet the property still belongs to that relative. In this case the tenure status is free and not owned. Skip to G08.

**G02:** This question attempts to determine how the households acquired their main dwelling unit. It only applies to responses of code “1” and “2” in G01.

Please note that for dwellings that are owner occupied nomads, probe to ascertain if the construction was from locally available materials or from cash. For cases where construction was from locally available materials code “other” while if cash was used to construct, code 3 that is “constructed cash”.

There are cases where a household may have constructed or purchased a house from both loan and cash basis in which case code “6” or ‘5’ as appropriate. When a house is a gift it means that it was acquired without any payment. Bartered refers to instances where a household acquired a dwelling through exchange of some sort.

**G03:** The question applies to responses of codes 2, 4, 5 and 6 in G02 purchased or constructed on loan. It aims at gauging the extent of the burden of housing loans on the Household. The loan may have been sourced from a cooperative, a bank, housing finance or building society or from an individual.

If a house was either purchased or constructed from loan and the household has since finished servicing the loan then enter 0 as the amount spent on servicing loan.

**G04:** The age of the house is important in confirming the value of the house as well as indicative of the maintenance and durability of the house.

There are instances where the construction of a house took a long time(e.g. construction of a house started in 1991 and ended in 1999). Always take the age of house from when the house was completed and/or first occupied.

If house is over 97 years, code 97
If “DON’T KNOW” (D.K) code 98.

**G05:** This is an attempt to derive the value of the house and should be posed to those Households that own their dwelling.

It should be noted that in the rural areas, it may be unwelcome to ask this question as it is, since in ancestral homes, the issue of selling the dwelling do not even arise. For the purposes of this survey, the cost of construction will be used to derive the value of homes in rural areas.
Confirm from the respondents the cost of (1) Materials, (2) labour and (3) any other inputs to be sure that the estimated cost of construction is accurate enough.

For dwellings especially in arid and semi arid areas where labour is the component that can be costed, obtain the number of people who can build the house, how long it can take them and use the wage rates in the locality to obtain the labour costs.

**G06:** This question determines from whom the Household has rented their dwelling; it therefore only applies to HH who answered Code 5 and 3 in G01
Be sure to get the actual owner of the dwelling. If given personal name of the owner, code “individual”
- Government refers to the Central government
- Local Authority refers to specific local Government unit such as municipalities, urban, & town councils etc. Parastatals refer to wholly owned Government concerns.

**G07:** This question should be posed strictly to those who pays rent for their dwellings. For households whose rent is subsidised i.e. those that answered 3 in GO1, capture only what the Household actually spends per month.

For households whose rents are inclusive of bills for water, electricity, security etc., probe to isolate the rent minus these bills. The rent ideally should exclude these bills but in case it is difficult to isolate the actual rent, then record the amount provided. If the Household pays rent in advance e.g. for 2 years etc. calculate and get the monthly rent, exclude deposit and any other charges.

**G08:** This question aims at determining the market rents against actual rents paid by Households and those that own their dwellings.

For households in the rural areas where there is no basis for estimating market rent, the rent will be derived from construction cost and durability and determine the depreciation rates per month as rent. Remember that the estimated rent will be derived for all Household living in owned, or rented but subsidized dwellings and free dwellings also.

**G08A:** Obtain the number of dwelling units that this house hold occupies.

**G09:** Habitable rooms, refers to those that are used for living and excludes bathrooms, toilets, storerooms, Garage etc.

If a room is used for functions beyond those conventionally accepted then they may be included as habitable rooms e.g. if a garage or store is as well used for sleeping, then it will be included among the habitable rooms. A room that is divided by a curtain or some cartons should just be considered as one room.

Remember to include all rooms that are habitable even though they may currently be underutilized such as is the case with guest rooms. Enter the number of rooms for the main dwelling separately in the space provided and then the total number of rooms in the other dwellings in the space provided.

In rural areas, make sure you have registered all the habitable rooms in the other dwellings including the boy’s quarters. It is common in rural areas for separate kitchens to be used by the girls for sleeping; in this case the kitchen should be included as a habitable room.

**G10:** This question attempts to establish the floor area available for the household, together with G09, it will be used to derive the level of congestion when the persons per room are derived. The room sizes of all the habitable room both in the main dwelling and other dwellings should be captured.
Remember to be objective and courteous when requesting the respondent to take measurement of the rooms. Avoid arguing with the respondent on this question.

For respondents who are aware of their room sizes, do not insist of them actually taking the measurements while you are there. If they request for time to take the measurement then cooperate and record the measurements in a subsequent visit.

You may try to confirm the accuracy of measurements given. E.g. sitting rooms are often (not always) larger than bedrooms for instance, compare the measurement to confirm accuracy.

Most people in the rural areas are conversant with measurements in feet. Despite of this reason the measurements for room sizes will all be taken in Sq. metres for consistency. Therefore when given measurement in feet you will convert into sq metres for recording in the questionnaire to 2 decimal places.

Conversion 1 square feet = 0.092903 square metres

Some room shapes are not very regular remember to apply mathematical methodologies to derive the respective room sizes.

e.g. for a room of the following shape

\[ \text{Room Size}(A) = (A+B) - (B) \]

You will be provided with the tape measure that you will give the respondent to use in taking measurements.

**G11:** This question determines the type of dwelling in which the Household lives in. Some households live in single rooms either in a flat, Bungalow, or even a maisonette. You are supposed to record the type of house in which the single room is located. If it is a single room within a flat then the type of house is flat. A single room hut in the rural will record a house type code 6.

**House/ Bungalow** - Is a single storeyed self-contained dwelling unit in its own compound. Some single houses in the rural areas may not be self-contained. Such a house is normally but not always occupied by one household.

**Maisonette** – Is a semi-detached or terraced self-contained dwelling unit on two floors. There are usually many maisonnelettes in a single structure.

**Flat** - Is a dwelling unit joined to others in a single multi-storey building. Every flat is on a single floor i.e. all the necessary facilities are on the same floor. Dwelling units above shops or commercial units in multi-storey buildings are also classified as flats. Some dwelling units in flats may not be self-contained.

**Swahili** – They are several dwelling units in a structure with a single main gate where facilities such as toilets, bathroom and kitchen are shared either by the same or different households living in single rooms within the main structure.

**Shanty** - This is dwelling structure, which is temporary in construction. They are made of materials like cartons, plastic sheets etc, they often don’t have any sanitation facility or water. Such a dwelling is mostly found in informal settlements or slums.
Manyatta/ traditional huts – These are single structure mostly several within a compound that are occupied by individuals within a family. They normally are detached from toilets, kitchens and other related facilities.

Other dwelling – Is any other type of dwelling structures.

G12: The wall material of the main dwelling unit can be used to check/confirm the construction cost if considered along side other factors such as size etc.

You should record the most dominant material e.g. if a house wall is made of stones up to say a foot from the ground, and the other part is wood, then the dominant material is wood. You should realize that the materials are mostly observable without posing the question to the respondent.

G13: The roofing materials for a house enhance the durability of the house as it protects the house from natural elements.

Roofing material is considered to be the one that protects the household from effects of nature. In the case of a flat where the top most floors has a tile roof, households that live in the top most floor will have their roofing material as tiles while all other households in the lower floors will have concrete as their roofing materials.

To deal with security issues, some households may construct a concrete roof on any house, which is not a flat, but cap it with tiles. For such households, their preferred roofing material is tile. Therefore the roof material for that household is tiles. The concrete is not actually meant for a roofing material but is an anti burglary mechanism.

G14: Please capture the floor finish (refers to final materials applied on the floor) material. For example, a house could have a cement floor which has been caped by tiles in this case the floor finish is tiles and not cement.

Other decorative materials such as carpets should not be considered as floor finish material. Do not assume since in some dwelling units the sitting room might have tiles while the rest of the house is simply cement floor. Always confirm with the respondent is the floor finish material is uniform in the whole house. For cases where a mixture of floor finish is applied, code the one that covers the greatest floor surface.

Improved earth floor refers to traditional attempts to improve the floor using cow dung for instance in some communities.

G15: The location of the kitchen may be use to determine stuffiness as well as hygiene matters among other issues.

- Outdoor - refers to a case where the Households cook outside the dwelling in the open. This is common in rural areas.
- Enclosed detached – refers to a case where the Household cooks in a separate structure detached from the dwelling
- Enclosed attached - refers to a separate room/cooking area within the main dwelling/house.
- Indoor without partition – This refers to cases where the cooking and other uses( such as sitting sleeping etc) are undertaken with the same area. This is common in single room dwellings in urban areas. Include in this category single rooms with cooking areas partitioned with curtains, carton etc
- Indoor with partition – refers to non- structural partition – e.g. cardboards etc.
There are common cases of household with multiple location of cooking areas. For instance, a household may be cooking both indoor and outdoor. For such cases, probe and code where they most often cook.

G16: The type of cooking appliance taken together with the location of cooking area is used to determine the safety, hygienic and other environmental concerns.

E.g. If a household’s cooking area is within the dwelling without partition, and yet the appliance they use is a traditional firestone, the safety due to likely fires is compromised. At the same time, the level of pollution in this household is likely to be higher.

- Traditional Stone fire – refers to the cooking arrangements where three or two stone are used mostly with firewood. Include in this category, mouldings which are used for cooking.
- Ordinary jiko – refers to the common jiko mostly made of tin
- Improved jiko - refers to cases where the ordinary jiko has been modified, usually with a layer of clay, for efficiency and safety.
- Kerosene stove – refers to a stove which uses kerosene for cooking.
- Gas/electric Cooker - refers to the cookers specially designed to use of gas or electricity or both.

G17: This question attempts to determine how smoke is directed out from the dwelling.

Do not confuse a chimney and a window or any other form of ventilation. The chimney is a structured construction aimed at directing out smoke. There are instances where a household uses a device to suck smoke fumes in place of a chimney; this should be considered as a chimney.

The interviewer is in most instances able to observe and confirm whether there is a chimney. Remember that some chimneys are structured in such a way that they emit smoke through the wall. Such chimneys are mostly constructed using mabati like materials.

G18: The location of the toilet facility and the state of its maintenance has hygienic implication.

A toilet facility is within the dwelling of the household if members do not have to go outside their dwelling for the toilet facility. For instance if a Household lives in a single room in a flat where there are toilets in every floor to cater for all the occupants, then the answer to G18 will be No although the HH do not completely go outside the building.

5.8 SECTION H: WATER, SANITATION & ENERGY

Respondent: The Household head or the most informed member of the household and Interviewer’s own observation.

Purpose of section
This sector deals with key infrastructural services. It is mainly aimed at determining access of most household to these services and where applicable the cost of these services. Remember that last month used in this section do not refer to the calendar month

H01: The source of water for a household has implication on hygiene and health status.
For each use i.e drinking, cooling, bathing etc., indicate the most frequent source. For example, if at most times a household gets drinking water from rain water collection and occasionally uses bottled water, then the main source of drinking water for this household is rain water.

**H02:** This question establishes how long it takes to get the water from source. This could be the time that could have been used on other economic activities.

If the source is within or the immediate outside of the dwelling, record zero.

**H03:** The time taken waiting to obtain water at the source for drinking.

**H04:** The question attempts to determine the variation in source against seasons.

**H05:** Record the main source of drinking water in other seasons. Remember to use the codes in H01.

**H07:** The storage of water has implications on the safety of the water, indicate the main storage mechanism. This question mainly applies to the drinking water.

**H08:** This questions aims at establishing the cost of water. It is desirable to get the cost of water for each use. However, where it is not possible to breakdown, enter the total cost.

If the last payment covered several months estimate the monthly costs based on consumption per day (H10) and the duration for which the payment was made.

**H09:** The question attempts to determine the amount of water for which payment is made in HO8. Record the equivalent approximate number of 20 litres Jeri can of water that was paid for in the last month. For Piped was has to be estimated in terms of how many Jeri can equivalent

**H10:** This captures the consumption of the household in 20 litre cans per day. For those households that receive regular bills, use the amount for which payment was paid to estimate the consumption per day.

**H11:** Indicate the cost of a 20 litres Jeri can of water. Remember that this should be the average cost per Jeri can.

**H12:** Establish if all the household members use the same (common) toilet facility. In some communities in rural areas, some members of a household especially the men use a different toilet facility, probe to confirm such cases

**H13:** This question determines what kind of toilet facility is used by the household. Please probe to know the most commonly used facility, some Households in rural may have a flush toilet within the dwelling which is only used at night but mostly use a pit latrine. In such cases the kind of toilet facility used by the household is pit latrine.

*Note* refers to cases where the household do not have any form of toilet facility. Such households may resort to using spaces outside the homestead/dwelling which may have bushes, grass, shrubs etc.

**H14:** How deep a latrine is determines how hygienic the facility is. For the purpose of this survey, how deep a latrine is will not refer to the depth before use (i.e. immediately after construction but it will refer to the level of the excreta from the top surface.
Deep will refer to those that measure 10 ft and above from the top. While shallow will refer to those that measure less than 10 ft. An appropriate means of measurement will be determined and provided to the interviewer.

**H15:** When a toilet is used by many households the facility becomes inadequate. Record the number of households who use the toilet facility recorded in H13.

**H16:** The entity/person that provided/built a toilet facility determines accessibility and cost. If a toilet facility is owned by say a local government but managed by a community group, then this facility is owned by the council therefore code 5.

**H17:** This refers to the means by which the Household disposes their domestic refuse/garbage.

**H18:** What is the main source of cooking fuel.

**H18A:** Include the two main sources of lighting fuel for the household. This does not include incidental lighting sources. Most households tend to have other alternative sources of lighting fuel that are not regularly used. If only one source is used only fill the main lighting fuel.

**H19:** Check to confirm that there is an installed panel within or near the dwelling. Most panels are normally installed at the roof or a convenient position outside the dwelling. If no, Skip to H22.

**H20:** Size of a solar panel does not refer to the physical size but the wattage of the solar panel. Try to probe to establish whether the respondent is aware of the wattage of the panel. Do not insist since some respondents may actually be unaware of the wattage in this code 

**H21:** Since KPLC is currently the sole distributor of electric power in Kenya, electricity line running into the dwelling may be an indication that the households get its power from KPLC. Confirm with the respondent what you have observed.

**H22:** This question aims at establishing whether the household gets electric power from a generator either owned by themselves, a neighbour or any other institution.

**H23:** Car/Motorcycle batteries otherwise known as wet cells are usually a common source of power for radios, TVs and light in rural households. Do not include the category of batteries that are solar powered. Only include those that are charged, used and then recharged.

**H24:** This question requires the main source of electricity for all uses of the household.

**H25:** The cost of electricity here refers to recurrent costs and not initial installation costs. For those who receive electricity power from KPLC, the bills do not usually coincide with an exact calendar month, but cover a span of approximately a month. Therefore use the last bill that covered the equivalence of a month.

**H26:** Include the recurrent cost of power from other sources other than electricity. This may include cost of fuel for those using generators, charging costs for wet cells etc.

**H27:** This establishes if there is working electricity in the dwelling. There are instances where electricity although connected to the dwelling may not be working e.g. in circumstances where power has been disconnected for a significant period of time. Do not include cases where the power has been disconnected for every short periods e.g. 1 or 2 days.
H28: This question established how accessible the electricity is. The power line must be supplying low voltage for household consumption. The high voltage power lines may not be useful for the households.

H29: Torch batteries are normally used by most households because of its portability and also for emergencies. The batteries (dry cells) are mostly used on torches.

H30: Record the number of batteries that were used over the last month.

H31: Record the total expenditure of the household on these batteries over the last month.

H32: This question seeks to determine the usage of other sources of energy most of which are mainly used for cooking. Out of the 8(eight) sources indicate those that have been used by the household in the last 12 months.

H33: Indicate those sources that were used in the last 12 months.

H34: Indicate those sources that were used in the last one month.

H35: Indicate the purpose of use against each energy source that the household used. Most of households in urban areas use specific energy sources for boiling or heating water for various purposes.

H36: This question attempts to derive the unit of measure and quantity for most of these energy sources. Note that the spaces for kerosene, LPG and electricity are blocked for this question since their units of measurement are known. The other energy sources do not have standard units of measurement.

H37: Indicate the estimated weight of the unit recorded in H35 in Kilograms for the sources covered there.

H38: This question attempts to derive the amount of the three sources not covered in H35 & H36 that was used by the household. Remember that options 1 to 5 are blocked.

Indicate number of units used in the space provided and the unit in the relevant space. Note that you are considering usage over the last month.

H39: Indicate the cost of the respective units of sources used during the last month. Some sources such as collected firewood, Animal waste (Biomass) are normally obtained from farms and immediate environs and thus may not have direct cost implications; you will notice that the corresponding spaces are blocked/shaded.

H40: This question explores the accessibility of these sources of energy. Since electricity is normally connected into the dwelling, there is no time taken at the source. The corresponding space is therefore blocked. Remember that the question seeks to get the time taken to the nearest source and not a preferred source.

H41: Record the cumulative minutes spent per week to get the energy sources against which the spaces are not blocked/shaded. Remember to indicate time spent by men, women and children.

---

5.9 SECTION I: CONSUMPTION OF FOODS ITEMS OVER THE LAST 7 DAYS

Respondent: Individual primarily responsible for household food preparation.
**Purpose of section**
Information on the food consumption expenditure should be asked of the individual in the household who is primarily responsible for food preparation for the household, with the assistance of other food preparers and the head of household, if applicable.

The consumption of food items will be captured using two methods in this survey i.e. the recall and the diary methods.

**5.9.1. Personal Interview Method or Recall Method**
This is a data collection approach that uses personal interviews to collect data from respondents by means of direct questioning. The method will be used in collecting most of the survey information.

For the food items, you will have a list of items which you will interview the household on how much they have purchased, consumed from purchase, consumed from own stock/own/production and consumed from gifts and other sources. You will capture the quantity and value of these transactions. The recall period for food items period will be the last seven (7) days.

For non food items, such as clothing and footwear, housekeeping supplies, non prescription drugs, and personal care products and services, etc. the recall period will be the last calendar month, while for heavy durable items such as automobiles, and major appliances, etc. the recall period will be the last calendar twelve (12) months.

The food section has the following broad categories:-

- Cereals
- Roots and tubers
- Pulses
- Vegetables
- Meat
- Other animal Products
- Fish
- Dairy products and eggs
- Oils and fats
- Ghee is especially from milk
- Fruits
- Sugar
- Jam, honey, sweets and candies
- Beverages for drinking
- Non-alcoholic beverages
- Alcoholic beverages
- Spices and Miscellaneous
- Tinned products
- Cooked/prepared foods from vendors, kiosk, café and restaurants

**Unit codes**
There is a large volume/weight unit coding scheme used in the KIHBS. This scheme is used here in Section I refers to quantities usually found in retail markets and other commercial setting. The coding scheme, while extensive, cannot hope to be comprehensive to cover all non-standard units used by households throughout Kenya. The following set of rules is given to assist you in using these unit-coding schemes.
Whenever possible, report the quantity in standard, metric units. If one can easily convert the quantity the respondent reports to kilograms or litres, please do so. However, we recognize that reporting quantities in standard units will often be difficult to do. Consequently we have provided in the coding list more than a dozen alternative non-standard units that you may employ when you cannot convert the amount reported to a standard unit. If the respondent reports a quantity in a unit other than those listed in the coding scheme code it as others and specify.

If you find it impossible to enter the quantity reported by the respondent using the standard or the non-standard units found in the coding scheme, you should obtain a clear description of the unit the respondent is referring to in terms of volume or dimensions (height, width, depth). Inform your field supervisor of this non-standard unit.

You should recognize that the quantities reported will be estimates. Consequently, you should be reasonable in the requests you make to the respondent for additional precision in the quantities he or she reports. Do not unnecessarily irritate the respondent for additional information when he or she has already given you that which they are able to provide.

Also recognize that different terms are used for the same units:
- ‘Debe’ refers to the standard 20kg tin. This tin may be beat up to reduce its size so that items weighs less.
- ‘Bunch’ should be used for bananas, plantains, and similar foods. The unit can also be used for green leafy vegetables (sukumawiki, spinach, etc.), if the bunches reported cannot be converted to individual pieces.
- ‘Piece/number’ refers to any individual quantity of an item. For example, the unit coding for ‘piece’ could also be used to report packet, box, fruit, slice, ‘whole fish’, chicken, ‘cabbage’, ‘pumpkin’, ‘cassava tuber’, ‘sweet potato’, ‘bottle’, ‘jar’, and so on and on.

However, for commercially manufactured products, if possible you should report the standard unit, e.g. 250 g of spaghetti, rather than one piece (box) of spaghetti.
- ‘Heap’ refers to a collection of smaller items sold in retail markets, such as a heap of peas or tomatoes. Where possible, you should use standard units or convert the contents of a single ‘heap’ to the many ‘pieces’ that make up the heap. This is particularly the case when different sized heaps of the same items are commonly found in a market or cluster. Only use ‘heap’ when you cannot convert the quantity in the heap to an alternative unit.

Decimals: Note that if you need to report portions of a unit, you should use decimals, making sure that you write the decimal point in the questionnaire cell very prominently, e.g., 3.5. Do not use fractions, e.g. 3¼, as experience has shown that data entry clerks frequently misinterpret fractions when they process the questionnaires later. However, try to avoid using decimal points, whenever possible. For example, rather than noting a quantity as ‘0.5 of a 50 kg bag’, you should note ‘25 kg’.

I01: The question seeks to find out whether the household purchased and/or consumed the specified item during the last seven days. The question in I01 needs to be asked concerning each item listed at the start of each row of the section. If the answer to I01 is YES, record 1 and proceed with the questions in I02 to I07 otherwise you skip to the next item.

I02: This is the item code which is pre-coded

I03: Purchased means that the household paid for the item on cash basis or by cheque, or by credit. This is expenditure for the household which has been paid or will be paid for at some later date. Please note that this question is asking about how much of each item the household members purchased. In the first column please fill the total quantity purchased, followed by the unit code for the purchase and finally in column three, please enter the total amount of money paid for the item in Kenya shillings.

I04: In this column please enter the quantity of the purchased item that was consumed by the household.
I05: This relates to the consumption of food items that have been produced within the household i.e. own production. The question is asking about how much of each item the household members consumed from own-production. In the first column please fill the total quantity consumed, followed by the unit code for the item and finally in column three, please enter the total amount of money paid for the item in Kenya shillings.

I05A: This relates to the consumption of food items are stocked by the household i.e. own stock. Food items purchased/acquired outside the recall (i.e. more than seven days ago) period or taken from household business will count as own stock. The question is asking about how much of each item the household members consumed from own stocks. In the first column please fill the total quantity consumed, followed by the unit code for the item and finally in column three, please enter the total amount of money paid for the item in Kenya shillings.

I06: This question is asking about how much of each item the household members consumed from gifts and other sources. In the first column please fill the total quantity consumed, followed by the unit code for the item and finally in column three, please enter the total amount of money paid for the item in Kenya shillings.

I07: This question is asking about for the total quantity of each item the household members consumed from all sources, i.e. it is an aggregation of quantities in I04, I05, I05A and 106. In the first column please fill the total quantity consumed, followed by the unit code for the item and finally in column three, please enter the total amount of money paid for the item in Kenya shillings. Be very careful when doing the aggregation as different units may be in use for the same item.

5.10 SECTION J: CONSUMPTION OF REGULAR NON-FOODS ITEMS LAST ONE MONTH

Respondent: Head of household or other informed adult household member.

Purpose of section
Attention now turns to household expenditure on non-food items and services. This section and the following two sections should be asked of the head of household, who should be assisted by other informed adults within the household.

This section also uses the personal interview or recall method. For regular non-food items, you will have a list of items which you will use to interview the household on how much they have purchased or obtained by other means such as from own stock/production, gifts and other sources. You will capture the quantity and value of these transactions. The recall period for these non-food items will be the last calendar month.

The regular non-food items are classified into the following broad categories:

- Household operations
- Personal care and effects
- Medical care
- Transport and communication

Carefully explain to the respondent the type of items you are seeking information about. Be clear and precise and tactfully ask questions appropriately. The questions refer to purchase/acquisition of goods and services over the past one month.
J01: The question seeks to find out whether the household purchased the specified item, paid for the service or obtained the same during the last month. The question in J01 needs to be asked concerning each item/service listed at the start of each row of the section. If the answer to J01 is YES, record 1 and proceed with the questions in J02 to J04, otherwise skip to the next item.

J02: This is the item code which is pre-coded

J03: Purchased means that the household paid for the item/service on cash basis, by cheque, or by credit. This is an expenditure for the household which has been paid or will be paid for at some later date. Please note that this question is asking about how much of each item the household members purchased in the last one month. In the first column please enter the total quantity purchased, followed by the unit code for the purchase and finally in column three, please enter the total amount of money paid for the item in Kenya shillings.

J04: This relates to the acquisition/use of non-food items/services obtained without payments e.g. own-production/own stocks, gifts etc. Items and services purchased/acquired outside the recall period (i.e. more than one calendar month ago) or taken from household business will count as own stock. In the first column please fill the total quantity consumed, followed by the unit code for the item and finally in column three, please enter the market value in Kenya shillings.

5.11 SECTION K: CONSUMPTION OF FREQUENT DURABLE ITEMS LAST ONE MONTH

Respondent: Head of household or other informed adult household member.

Purpose of section
Attention now turns to household expenditure on other non-food items and services. This section and the following section should be asked of the head of household, who should be assisted by other informed adults within the household.

This section also uses the personal interview or recall method. For other non-food items, you will have a list of items which you will use to interview the household on how much they have purchased or obtained by other means such as from own stock/production, gifts and other sources. You will capture the quantity and value of these transactions. The recall period for these non-food items will be the last calendar month

The other non-food items are classified into the following broad categories:-

- Domestic services
- Recreation and entertainment
- Medical care

K01: The question seeks to find out whether the household purchased the specified item/paid for the service or obtained the same during the last month. The question in K01 needs to be asked concerning each item/service listed at the start of each row of the section. If the answer to K01 is YES, record 1 and proceed with the questions in K02 to K04 otherwise you skip to the next item.

K02: This is the item code which is pre-coded
K03: Purchased means that the household paid for the item/service on cash basis or by cheque, or by credit. This is an expenditure for the household which has been paid or will be paid for at some later date. Please note that this question is asking about how much of each item the household members purchased in the last one month. In the first column please enter the total quantity purchased, followed by the unit code for the purchase and finally in column three, please enter the total amount of money paid for the item in Kenya shillings.

K04: This relates to the use of non-food items/services obtained without payments e.g. own-production/own stocks, gifts etc. Items and services purchased/acquired outside the recall period (i.e. more than a month ago) or taken from household business will also fall in this category. In the first column please fill the total quantity consumed, followed by the unit code for the item and finally in column three, please enter the value of the item/service in Kenya shillings.

5.12 SECTION L: CONSUMPTION DURABLE ITEMS LAST ONE MONTH

Respondent: Head of household or other informed adult household member.

Purpose of section
Attention now turns to household expenditure on other non-food items and services. This section and the following section should be asked of the head of household, who should be assisted by other informed adults within the household.

This section also uses the personal interview or recall method. For other non-food items, you will have a list of items which you will use to interview the household on how much they have purchased or obtained by other means such as from own stock/production, gifts and other sources. You will capture the quantity and value of these transactions. The recall period for these non-food items will be the last calendar month.

The other non-food items are classified into the following broad categories:-
- Clothing
- Footwear

L01: The question seeks to find out whether the household purchased the specified item/paid for the service or obtained the same during the last month. The question in L01 needs to be asked concerning each item/service listed at the start of each row of the section. If the answer to L01 is YES, record 1 and proceed with the questions in L02 to L04 otherwise you skip to the next item.

L02: This is the item code which is pre-coded

L03: Purchased means that the household paid for the item/service on cash basis or by cheque, or by credit. This is an expenditure for the household which has been paid or will be paid for at some later date. Please note that this question is asking about how much of each item the household members purchased in the last one month. In the first column please enter the total quantity purchased, followed by the unit code for the purchase and finally in column three, please enter the total amount of money paid for the item in Kenya shillings.

L04: This relates to the use of non-food items/services obtained without payments e.g. own-production/own stocks, gifts etc. Items and services purchased/acquired outside the recall period (i.e. more than a month ago) or taken from household business will also fall in this category. In the first column please fill the total quantity consumed, followed by the unit code for the item and finally in column three, please enter the value of the item/service in Kenya shillings.
5.13 SECTION M: CONSUMPTION OF INFREQUENT DURABLE ITEMS

Respondent: Head of household or other informed adult household member.

Purpose of section
This type of consumption refers to less frequent purchase/acquired durable items and the recall period is one year. In addition, we will capture ownership of these durables irrespective of when they were purchased/obtained.

This section also uses the personal interview or recall method. For the durable items, you will have a list of items which you will use to interview the household on how much they have purchased or obtained by other means such as from own stock/production, gifts and other sources. You will capture the quantity and value of these transactions. The recall period for these durable items will be the last twelve (12) months.

The other non-food items are classified into the following broad categories:-
- Furniture
- Baby goods
- Major household appliances
- Glassware, Tableware and utensils
- Household furnishing
- Transport and communication
- Recreation and culture
- Non-consumption expenditure

M01: The question seeks to find out whether the household has purchased the specified item. The question in M01 will be asked for each item listed at the start of each row of the section. If the answer to M01 is NO, skip to M04.

M02: This is the item code which is pre-coded

M03: The question is asking about how many of each item the household members purchased/paid for. In the first column please fill the number purchased, followed by the total amount of money paid for the item/service in Kenya shillings.

M04: The question is asking whether the household owns any other item/service in addition to those purchased in the last 12 months. If the answer is YES, record 1 and proceed with the questions in M05 to M07 otherwise you skip to the next item.

M05: This question is asking about how many of each item/service the household members own excluding those purchased within the last 12 months. Record the number of items/service owned by the household, e.g. 5 tables.

M06: This question is asking about the age of the item. If there is more than one item, give the average age in years excluding those purchased within the last 12 months.

M07: This question is asking how much the item would costs if the household were to sell it today excluding those purchased within the last 12 months. If more than one item, give the average price in Kenya shillings.
5.9.2. Diary Account Method

This is a data collection approach where respondents are left with daily expenditure schedules (diaries) into which they record all items and services purchases and/or consumed each day, for a given period. There will be two types of diaries; the consumption diary and the purchase diary. The consumption diary will be used to obtain detailed data on food items consumption by members of the household within and outside the household. The purchase diary will be used to obtain detailed data on all purchases made by members of the household.

The interviewer will be checking on the completion of the diaries after every other day, during the two week diary period. Where there are illiterate respondents, school-going children can be drafted to assist their illiterate parents in completing the diaries; otherwise, the interviewer will be required to visit the household and assist with the completion of diaries everyday. The diaries keepers are asked to record everything that is purchased and/or consumed each day. All items, no matter how cheap or unimportant, should be recorded. The form of payment for these items whether cash, cheque, hire purchase, credit, etc doesn’t matter.

For the Diary

In this method you will issue the household with two diaries and carefully explain to them how to fill it. The household will be provided with two diaries, one for consumption and another one for purchases. The household will be required to write down all items purchased daily in the purchases’ diary and record all items consumed per day in the consumption diary. In addition the household will record the quantities and values of items purchased or consumed.

The interviewer will explain to the members of the household who will be recording item transactions that they should:

Consumption Diary
- Give the date, i.e., day, month and year (dd/mm/yy) on which the item was consumed in column 1.
- Give description of the item consumed in column 2, i.e., brand/label name and size of the item.
- In column 3, leave it blank
- In column 4, indicate whether the item consumed was purchased, drawn from own production/business stocks or received as a gift etc
- Give the quantity of the items consumed, in column 5, e.g. 100 bebes of maize grain
- Indicate the unit of measure of the item in column 6, e.g. kilogram, bottle, meter, bag etc.
- In column 7, give the equivalent standard measure if the unit of measure in column 6 is non-standard, e.g. one debe of maize weighs 20 kg. Enter 20 for number column and 1 for unit column.
- Enter the source of the item consumed from the list of codes given, in column 8, e.g. code 11 for farm.

- For the consumption, we need the quantity of the specific item consumed and not the food item, thus each meal consumed should be broken down to the constituent item(s) for which we can calculate the calorific value i.e. for a plate of boiled githeri consumed we ask the respondent to record the amount of maize, beans and salt consumed.
- Respondents might omit some meals or tend to give the food cooked for the household as opposed to that which is consumed that day. To overcome this we explain to the respondent to enter the consumption diary by the main meals for the households i.e. Breakfast, Lunch and Supper consumed in the household, then enter the meals consumed by members of the household outside the household e.g. Children eating lunch at school, someone working outside
the household and eating lunch outside. Finally capture snacks eaten between meals and alcoholic consumption.

- You should also remind the respondent to ensure that small items consumed by the household were recorded too e.g. Salt, tomatoes, cooking fat, onions etc. Most households tend to ignore them as they are of small monetary value and/or are consumed in small quantities.

- Finally, emphasis that we need to capture what is consumed not what is cooked e.g. if you use 2 kg packet of wheat flour to make 15 chapatis and a 8 chapatis are consume at lunch time then the correct entry for lunch will be \( \frac{8}{15} \times 2 \text{ Kg} = 1.067 \text{ Kg} \) of wheat flour. Do not forget the salt and cooking fat used.

**Purchases Diary**

- Give the date, i.e., day, month and year (dd/mm/yy) on which the item was purchased in column 1.

- Give description of the item purchased in column 2, i.e., brand/label name and size of the item.

- In column 3, leave it blank

- Give the quantity of the items purchased in column 4, e.g. 10 debes of maize grain

- Indicate the unit of measure of the item in column 5, e.g. kilogram, bottle, meter, bag etc.

- In column 6, give the equivalent standard measure if the unit of measure in column 5 is non-standard, e.g. one debe of maize weighs 20 kg. Enter 20 for number column and 1 for unit column.

- Enter the full value in Shillings of the item purchased, irrespective of whether it was bought by cash or on credit, in column 7, e.g. Ksh 240 for two debes of maize.

- Enter the source of the item purchased from the list of codes given in column 8, e.g. code 11 for farm.

- For the purchase diary, we need to get price of item purchased and the item should be very specific.

- You should give all available information about the item, including the weight, brand, packaging etc. e.g. A bic biro instead of a biro, 400g of supa loaf bread instead of 400g of bread, 2kg of ex wheat flour instead of 2Kg of wheat flour.

---

**5.14 SECTION N: AGRICULTURE HOLDING**

**Respondent:** Individual(s) most informed on household agricultural activities.

**Purpose of section**

This is the first in a series of three sections dealing with various aspects of agricultural production and marketing. It is to be administered to the household head and others who are concerned with farming in the survey household. This section collects detailed parcel level information on the farming practices of the household during the last 12 months. Each row of this section on the questionnaire represents one agricultural parcel.

The reference period for this section is the last 12 months.

1. **Agricultural holding:** This is defined as all the land owned and/or operated by a household wholly or partially for agricultural purposes.

2. **Parcel:** This is defined as a single piece of land forming part of the holding but separated from other parts of the holding by private or communal land. A holding may be comprised of a single parcel or several parcels of land.
3. Production of Crops: Harvest production of crops measures values of all as harvested whether for sale or for farm and home consumption. Such a value is computed from quantity produced and producer prices for all individual commodities. It includes seed consumed for production purposes.

4. Producer prices: Consistent with FAO recommendations, agricultural prices to be recorded should be producer prices. Requested data are annual average producer prices of primary crops and livestock products, preferably at the farm gate.

5. Output of livestock: Consists of:
   - Marketed animals leaving the sector including those exported
   - Animals slaughtered on holdings
   - Stock changes in livestock number during the year
   - Non exceptional losses of animals suffered during the year.
   - All these animals should be valued at average producer prices.

6. Output of livestock products: This refers to primary commodities such as milk, eggs, wool, honey etc which are marketed, consumed on holdings, kept in stock or wasted during the reference year.

7. Agricultural capital formation on holdings: Agricultural capital formation is broken down into crop and livestock sub-sectors and aggregates for the other sub-sectors (forestry and fishery). The main components are:
   (i) Land improvements and extension such as reclamation and clearance, drainage, irrigation etc
   (ii) Development of plantations of permanent crops

   Change in work in progress

   Land improvement and plantation development include own-account capital formation in land and contractual work provided by specialized enterprises. Work in progress measures value of inputs in the reference year for production in the following year.

8. Non-Agricultural own account capital formation

   Includes construction of roads, sheds, fences, wells for irrigation etc made by farmers on holdings. Similar work done by specialized firms on holdings on contractual basis should not be included.

9. Forestry on holdings: This item measures wood production, own account afforestation etc valued at producer prices during the reference period.

10. Fishery on holdings: This item measures fish catches and increases in fish stocks during the reference period.

11. Seed: This item includes seeds valued at the appropriate prices depending on whether own produced or purchased.

12. Purchased manufactured feeds: This item includes feeds valued at the appropriate prices as in the case of seeds.

13. Fertilizers: This item refers to consumption of fertilizers in the process of agricultural production.

14. Pesticides and other chemicals: This item refers to consumption of pesticides and other chemicals in agricultural production. Pesticides for crops include insecticides, fungicides, herbicides meant for crop protection. On the other hand, livestock chemicals include chemicals used for dipping and spraying of livestock for tick control, vaccines, livestock drugs etc.
15. **Fuel, electricity and lubricants:** This is the cost of energy consumed by farmers during the year for agricultural production and not for household consumption.

16. **Water and irrigation cost:** This includes cost of:
(i) Water for irrigation supplied to holdings, and
(ii) irrigation services of all kinds valued at prices paid by farmers.
Rental costs of irrigation equipment, maintenance and current repair costs are also included.

17. **Maintenance and repairs:** This includes costs of maintenance and repairs of agricultural machinery and equipment including energy producing equipment such as windmills, water wheels etc, and rental of machinery and equipment.

18. **Purchased other goods and services:** Other expenditure includes maintenance and repairs of non-residential buildings, purchases of tools and other materials, communication costs, insurance related to production etc.

N01: This is a filter question for the entire section. If no member of the household farmed crops during the last 12 months, this section and the following section O are both skipped. Section O is skipped because it concerns the production and utilization of farm produce. However, even if Sections O and P are skipped, be sure to fill in the answer box for O01 and P01.

N02: Serial numbers for the PARCEL ID have been pre-coded. This column helps to obtain the total number of parcels to which the information collected refers.

N03: Obtain a list of all of the parcels cultivated by household members within the district before collecting additional information on each.
• In order to distinguish one parcel from another, write short names in N03 to identify each parcel uniquely.
• These names may simply consist of the major crop grown in the parcel, if the household has only one parcel in which that crop is grown or the major crop and a unique secondary crop. For example, “maize and pigeon pea”
• Including the name of the household member who is most responsible for cultivating the parcel can provide further identification. For example, “Mussa’s cassava”.
• If necessary, include the location of the parcel. For example, “Maize by path to primary school”.
• Note that the name of the parcel will not be entered into the data file used to analyze the survey. The name of the parcel is only to assist you and the survey household members easily discuss, without confusion, the cropping activities in which they are engaged.
• Familiarize yourself with the parcels so that one can guide the respondents.

N04: Once a list of all of the parcels cultivated by household members is done, identify who makes decisions about the cropping activities on each parcel. Copy his or her ID code as indicated in the household roster or use code “98” if the person is not listed as a member of the household. If possible, questions concerning an individual parcel should be asked of this individual.

N05: Land area is normally given in acres or hectares. Where the respondent chooses to report the area of the parcel in hectares, the interviewer should convert area given in hectares to acres (1 hectare = 2.47 acres). Wherever possible, encourage the respondents to estimate the area in acres and to one decimal place.
The area refers to the whole parcel and not part of it. In the event that it is not possible to determine the area a code for don’t know (DK) is provided. However, every effort should be made to get the parcel size.
Soil texture concerns the ‘heaviness’ of the soil in the parcel. Soil texture is useful for understanding potentially how productive the parcel might be in producing crops.

- Loamy soil is quite rich and usually red in color.
- Sandy soil is ‘light’ and light brown in colour, rough and does not retain water whereas clay soil is ‘heavy’ and dark/chocolate in colour.

The respondent should estimate the slope of the parcel.

- If water does not readily drain from the parcel, it is ‘flat’. ‘Steep, hilly’ parcels will be somewhat difficult to cultivate because of the slope.
- Note that many important farming areas of the country will not have any steep or even moderately steep slopes.

List five major crops grown in the parcel during the last 12 months. The crops listed should be the major crops in the parcel, whether defined in terms of yield or in terms of significance to the household. If the parcel is intercropped with several crops, usually food crops, pick the dominant ones, e.g. maize and cassava.

- Note that you should distinguish between local, composite, and hybrid varieties of maize.
The crops are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Crop</th>
<th>code</th>
<th>Crop</th>
<th>code</th>
<th>Crop</th>
<th>code</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>White maize</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Chillies</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>Pears</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hybrid maize</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Onions</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>Pineapples</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yellow maize</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Carrots</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>Bananas(cooking)</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Katumani maize</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Cabbages</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>Bananas (fruits)</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Synthetic maize</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Sukumawiki (kales)</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>Passion fruits</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wheat</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Tomatoes</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>Oranges</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rice</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>Pumpkins</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>Castor</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Finger millet</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>French beans</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>Plums</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bulrush millet</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>Field Peas</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>Coconut</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Golden millet</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Beans</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>Nappier grass</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other millet</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>Grams (black/green)</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>Paddock grass</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sorghum</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>Yellow grams</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>Sugar cane</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Barley</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>Cow peas</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>Pyrethrum</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oats</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>Pigeon peas</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>Cotton</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yams</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>Dolicos</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>Tobacco</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arrowroots</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>Soya beans</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>Tea</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cassava</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>Cashwenuts</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>Coffee</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sweet potatoes</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>Macadamia nuts</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>Wattle</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Potatoes</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>Groundnuts</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>Sisal</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Khat (Miraa)</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>Sim sim</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>Trees</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other crops</td>
<td>80</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**N09:** Ask about ownership of the parcel being farmed. If the HH does not own the parcel, skip to N11.

**N10:** Ask if a title deed is held for the parcel. This can indirectly show if the household can have access to credit as the title deed can be used as collateral. Whether YES or NO, skip to N12.

**N11:** This question asks how the parcel was acquired. Rented land refers to cases where money has been paid to the landlord/owner so that the household can operate the parcel of land for a specified period. Lease refers to a long term legal agreement for hire of land. Land inherited from parents and with no title deed available should be treated as freely acquired. Code 2. Land given by neighbor or friend at no cost will be coded 3 – free other.

**N12:** Do people buy or sell farmland in this area? If NO, skip to N14.

**N13:** The respondent should provide the market price for each parcel he operates and not the market price for (1 acre or 1 hectare) of land.
- Ideally the Field Supervisor will have some idea of land prices in the area, so one should know what reasonable prices are.

**N14:** Did the household members make any payments including in-kind payments to rent or lease the parcel? Answer this question if the respondent answered YES in N11. That is, If land is rented or leased. Otherwise, skip to N15.
N15: Irrigation is the cultivation of land using water from sources other than rain water. Record the number of months the household has been practicing irrigation during the last 12 months. If NO, skip to N20.

N16: Indicate the type of irrigation practiced.
- **Watering can**: Use of a can to water crops.
- **Hosepipe**: use of pipe to water crops.
- **Sprinkler**: Mechanized farming practice where water is sprayed on crops.
- **Canals**: Trenches dug on farm that carries water to crops e.g. Mwea irrigation scheme.
- **Furrow**: Water is obtained from source through gravity.
- **Drip**: water is administered to crops in minute quantities through a series of small pipes with the water dissemination points at regular intervals from the pipes.

N17: How does the household get water used for irrigation?
- **Treadle pump**: This refers to a manually operated machine which pumps water from source to the crops through pipes. This is very popular in tomato growing areas.
- **Motor pump**: This is the use of a motor pump whether fuel or electric powered to pump water from source to crops.
- **Gravity-fed pipeline**: The traditional method of pipeline installation, involving the excavation of a trench, laying of the pipe, back-filling and reinstating the surface. The distribution of water by gravity is controlled by the slope from the water source. In which case the higher the slope, the higher the water pressure.

N18: How much did the household spend on irrigating this parcel. This should include expenditure on water supplied to the parcels for irrigation last 12 months.

N19: How many months does the household have sufficient water for irrigation? This is to assess the adequacy of the water for the period the HH has been practicing irrigation during the last 12 months. Record response and probe if number of months does not seem ideal for the local situation in that region or cluster.

N20: Did the household apply inorganic fertilizer to parcel of land? Examples of inorganic fertilizer include DAP, CAN, UREA etc. If NO, skip to N24.

N21: How much fertilizer did the household apply for the parcel in the last 12 months. The quantity should be in KGs. If a single purchase of inorganic fertilizer (bought from shops) was made for use on several parcels, the respondent will have to determine how much of the inorganic fertilizer purchased was used on a particular parcel. 
- It is the quantity of this amount of inorganic fertilizer that should be reported here for each parcel.

N22: If a single purchase of inorganic fertilizer (bought from shops) was made for use on several parcels, the respondent will have to determine how much of the inorganic fertilizer purchased was used on a particular parcel. It is the value of this amount of inorganic fertilizer that should be reported here for each parcel.

N23: List up to two choices for inorganic fertilizer sources. If a neighbor is a relative, then, enter the code for relative. If only one source of fertilizer, report this in the ‘FIRST FERTILIZER’ column, leaving the ‘SECOND FERTILIZER’ column blank.
- The merchant refers to a fertilizer stockist/trader.
- The private company refers to large enterprises such as Amiran.
- The local market category relates to the shopping centre nearest to the farmer where fertilizer is purchased.
- NGO/CBO refers to Non-governmental Organizations/Community Based Organizations. Examples include PLAN international among others.
N24: Did the household apply organic fertilizer (manure) to parcel of land?
  • If NO, skip to N26.

N25: Report the value of manure for each parcel. An estimate of the value of own manure used or received for free should be indicated. If a single purchase of manure was made for use on several parcels, the respondent will have to determine how much of the fertilizer purchased was used on a particular parcel.

N26: Record separately, the household expenditure during the last 12 months on agricultural inputs related to crop production such as pesticides (insecticides, herbicides, fungicides etc), fuels, lubricants, electricity, expenditure on farm repairs, machinery and equipment, purchase of small farm implements (hoes, pangas, etc), tractor hire.

N27: Have the respondent estimate the household expenditure on:
  Land reclamation, clearance of bush or forested land etc
  Establishment of long term crops such as coffee, tea etc
  Purchase of agricultural equipment such as ploughs, tractors, combine harvester etc

5.15 SECTION O: AGRICULTURE OUTPUT

Respondent: Individual(s) most informed on household agricultural activities.

Purpose of section
This section collects detailed crop level information on the harvest and sales made for crops harvested last 12 months (both long and short rains cropping season). Each row of the section on the questionnaire represents a crop type. This section is to be administered to the household head and others who are concerned with farming in the survey household.

For the columns that require the respondent to report on quantities of the crop, encourage the respondent to use the same unit for all of these questions. If the respondent does not report the harvest in standard units (kilogrammes), convert the values given to standard units. This is, establish the equivalent weight of the non-standard value given in standard weight..

O02: Complete O02 for all crops before going on to the other questions in the section. Look at the crops listed as having been grown in each parcel in the previous section in N08. For every crop mentioned, you record in O02, confirming with the respondent that the crop was grown.
  • Also probe for any crops not originally noted in N08, but which are listed in Section O.
  • If the respondent(s) state that additional crops to those listed in N08 were harvested, you will need to note these crops in the appropriate parcel in N08.
  • If the crops not originally noted in N08 were grown in another parcel from those originally listed in Section N, the interviewer will need to collect information on that parcel by returning to Section N and completing another line.

O03: The parcel IDs refer to the serial numbers in N02. The crop name for a particular row is provided in O02. Five columns are provided to allow for cases where the same crop is grown in different parcels. Record the numbers of all parcels in the row for a particular crop.
  • Note that if the same crop was grown over more than one parcel, the amount of crop harvested in each parcel will be used in replying to O13.
  • If a crop was harvested from more than one parcel, it will be necessary to have the respondent(s) report the total harvest in a single unit. If they remember the harvest from each parcel in terms of
different units, they will have to convert the quantities harvested to a single type of unit for you to record the total harvest of the crop.

**O04:** Record area for each crop to one decimal place.
- As stated in N05, land area is normally given in acres or hectares. Where the respondent chooses to report the area of the parcel in hectares, the interviewer should convert area given in hectares to acres (1 hectare = 2.47 acres, and is also equivalent to 10,000m$^2$).

**Successive cropping:**
The area of successive crops is to be reported for each crop separately for each time the area is sown or planted during the reference year. If the same crop planted more than once, record the aggregate of the area planted.

**Mixed cropping:**
Estimate the area that each crop in the mixture would have covered if it had been grown alone. However, the sum of the different crop areas in the mixture should be equal to the total physical area of the parcel. The idea is to show the allocation of the physical area (land use categories) for the main crops grown.

**O05:** Did the household use any purchased seeds for this crop in the last 12 months? If NO skip to O09

**O06:** Source of the purchased seeds must be recorded here.
Probe to get the correct response. List up to two choices.

The merchant refers to a seed stockist/trader. The private company refers to large enterprises such as KFA. The local market category relates to the shopping centre nearest to the farmer where seeds are purchased. NGO/CBO refers to Non-governmental Organizations/Community Based Organizations. Examples include PLAN international among others.

**O07:** It is the quantity of this amount of seeds that should be reported here. However, be sure to include the quantity of seeds purchased from other farmers, as well as from agricultural input merchants.

**O08:** It is the value in (Kshs) of this amount of seeds that should be reported here. Only report purchased seeds here. However, be sure to include the cost of seeds purchased from other farmers, as well as from agricultural input merchants. As with the fertilizer, if a single purchase of seeds was made for use on several crops, the respondent will have to determine how much of the seeds purchased were used on a particular crop.

**O09:** Did the household purchase seedlings in the last 12 months? Examples of crops where seedlings are used include coffee, tea, trees and most other permanent crops.

**O10:** It is the number of seedlings that should be reported here.
- However, be sure to include the quantity of seedlings purchased from other farmers, as well as from agricultural input merchants.

**O11:** It is the value in (Kshs) of this amount of seedlings that should be reported here.

**Seedlings** refer to young plants for a certain crop eg **sukuma wiki, coffee, sugarcane, and other permanent crops.**

**O12:** Source of the purchased seedlings must be recorded here.
Do probe to get the correct response. List up to two choices.
O13: Record quantity harvested for each crop from all parcels of land. Record unit of quantity for the harvest. If don’t know then let the respondent estimate the quantity. The quantity should be in standard units as indicated at the bottom of the questionnaire.

O14: How much of the crop harvested did the HH consume in the last 12 months.

O15: Record quantity sold for each crop harvested. Record unit of quantity for the sale. If NONE, write 0 in the quantity column and skip to O09. If the units of sale is not in standard units, convert the weight of the quantity sold into standard units.

O16: This is the value of earnings from sale of the crop. Do not stress the respondent to give you the exact/precise amount but a rough estimate is good enough.

O17: What was the average price paid for the crop during the year? The price varies in the course of the year as supply fluctuates. The average price for the last 12 months is obtained by dividing the total earnings by the quantity sold. Ensure that the price given is for the units stated of quantity sold. For example, if the quantity sold is in tonnes, the price should be Kshs per tonne. The price stated should be in standard units.

O18: If there are more than two buyers, record the two who purchased the largest amount of the crop. List up to 2 main buyers per crop.

O19: How much was given to labourers as payment in-kind and how much was used to make other payments instead of cash payments? Record unit of quantity. If NONE, write 0 in the column for quantity.

O20: Of the amount harvested, how much is being held in stock (implies what is in storage) by the household? Record unit of quantity. If NONE, write 0 in the column for quantity.

O21: Of the amount harvested, how much is being retained as seeds by the household? Record unit of quantity. If NONE, write 0 in the column for quantity.

O22: Of the amount harvested, how much was given out as gifts by the household? Record unit of quantity. If NONE, write 0 in the column for quantity.

O23: Of the amount harvested how much was lost/wasted? Record unit of quantity. If NONE, write 0 in the column for quantity.

O24: What was the cause of the loss or wastage? List up to 2 main causes.

O25: A person-day of labor signify one day of labor provided by one person. For example, if the respondent hired one person for three days to ridge the parcel, and on another occasion hired five persons for one day to weed the parcel, eight person days of labor were used on the parcel.

O26: Have the respondent estimate the total cost of labor used on the parcel. This includes both regular and casual labor. • Have the respondent estimate as best he or she is able; however, do not excessively trouble the respondent in an attempt to get a more accurate total cost of labor. • If the household made in-kind wage payments to laborers, in estimating the value of the in-kind wages, the respondent should estimate what he or she would have to pay for the items they used in paying the wages if they had purchased them in the market.
**5.16 SECTION P: LIVESTOCK**

**Respondent:** Individual(s) most informed on household agricultural activities.

**Purpose of section**
This section collects detailed information on the ownership and sales of livestock over the past twelve months. Each row of the section on the questionnaire represents one type of livestock, poultry, fish or bees (emerging livestock). This section is to be administered to the household head and others in the survey household who are concerned with managing the household’s livestock. The ownership, husbandry and disposal of livestock is covered.

**P01:** This is a filter question for the entire section. If no member of the household raised or owned livestock during the past twelve months, the rest of this section is skipped. If the household does not own any of a specific type of livestock at present, but did own such livestock at some point in the past twelve months, the answer to this question should be ‘YES’, and the rest of the questions concerning that specific type of livestock should be asked.

**P02:** List all types of animals before proceeding with the rest of section. *(Note that all animals in this section should be those found within the district).*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>Exotic cattle</td>
<td>600</td>
<td>Poultry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101</td>
<td>Exotic Dairy cattle</td>
<td>601</td>
<td>Chicken Layers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>102</td>
<td>Exotic Beef cattle</td>
<td>602</td>
<td>Chicken Broilers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>103</td>
<td>Exotic calves</td>
<td>603</td>
<td>Indigenous Chicken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200</td>
<td>Zebu cattle</td>
<td>604</td>
<td>Chicks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201</td>
<td>Zebu Milk Cattle</td>
<td>605</td>
<td>Ducks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>202</td>
<td>Zebu Beef cattle</td>
<td>606</td>
<td>Geese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>203</td>
<td>Zebu calves</td>
<td>607</td>
<td>Ostriches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>300</td>
<td>Sheep</td>
<td>608</td>
<td>Turkey</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>301</td>
<td>Wool sheep</td>
<td>701</td>
<td>Camels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>302</td>
<td>Hair sheep</td>
<td>702</td>
<td>Donkeys</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>303</td>
<td>Immature sheep</td>
<td>703</td>
<td>Horses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400</td>
<td>Goats</td>
<td>704</td>
<td>Mules</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>401</td>
<td>Dairy Goats</td>
<td>801</td>
<td>Fish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>402</td>
<td>Meat Goats</td>
<td>802</td>
<td>Bees</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>403</td>
<td>Immature goats</td>
<td>803</td>
<td>Crocodiles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>500</td>
<td>Pigs</td>
<td>804</td>
<td>Rabbits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>501</td>
<td>Immature pigs</td>
<td>900</td>
<td>Others</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**P03:** Give the number of animals presently owned by the HH. If the household does not own any of a specific type of livestock at present, but did own such livestock at some point in the past twelve months, answer ‘zero’.

**P04:** The price noted should reflect the average price for the livestock in local markets. Record the average price in Kshs per animal sold.

**P05:** How many animals were sold? Record NUMBER. If the household did not sell such livestock at some point in the past twelve months, answer ‘zero’, then skip to P07.

**P06:** The value reported here should be the total amount earned from the sales of the livestock.
**P07:** How many animals did household consume? Record NUMBER. If the household did not consume such livestock at some point in the past twelve months, answer ‘zero’. Do not include here animals that may have been given to the household and consumed immediately.

**P08:** How many animals died? Record NUMBER. If the household did not have any animal death at some point in the past twelve months, answer ‘zero’. In cases where animals die and then the carcass is consumed, the number of animals that died should be included here. Also, include in the count animals born dead or those whose new born die thereafter.

**P09:** How many animals were lost or stolen? Record NUMBER. If the household did not have any such livestock stolen or lost at some point in the past twelve months, answer ‘zero’.

**P10:** How many animals were given away? Record NUMBER. If the household did not give away any such livestock at some point in the past twelve months, answer ‘zero’. Include in this category animals given out in ceremonies such as weddings, circumcision, gifts after passing examinations, gifts to grandchildren, etc.

**P11:** Transfer the animal code in P02 to P11 for all the animals owned by the household. Ensure that the code is placed next to the same serial number as in P02.

**P12:** Did the household purchase any animals? Remember this relates to the animals listed in P02. This can also act as a consistency check on the listed animals. If NO, skip to P15.

**P13:** How many animals were purchased? Record NUMBER.

**P14:** The value reported here should be the total costs of the livestock purchases by the household.

**P15:** Record the number of births from own livestock during the last 12 months. Record NUMBER.

**P16:** How many animals were received by your household? Do include animals received as gifts, payments or from any other sources but not meant for consumption. This item also includes animals given by the government and some NGOs for restocking particularly in the ASAL.
- Record NUMBER. If the household did not receive any such livestock at some point in the past twelve months, answer ‘zero’.

**P17:** This is labour measured in person-days during the last 12 months. If one person works for one day then that is one person-day and if two people work for three days then those are six person-days. If it is possible to apportion them record for each livestock otherwise record where it was mainly used. If no labour was hired, enter zero and skip P19.

**P18:** This is the cost of labor for livestock production. This includes labour (salaries) as well as in-kind benefits provided to herders, and other farm workers engaged in livestock production activities (herding, feeding, milking etc).

**P19:** The question intends to capture expenditure on material and service inputs in the livestock sector during the last 12 months. Indicate the amounts of money spent on the various items appropriately. Expenditure on livestock should be handled separately from that on crops. For expenditure such as electricity, pesticides and water that are not easy to apportion, give them for the livestock where it was mainly used. If an item is used on both crops and livestock, put it where it is mainly used if it is not possible to apportion.
P20: Indicate the provider of Artificial Insemination (AI) services. With liberalization, private veterinary practitioners have been providing these services to households. In cases where the household uses their own or a neighbor's bull, code 4.

P21: Indicate the provider of veterinary (animal treatment) services. As is the case with Artificial Insemination (AI) services, liberalization has resulted in private veterinary practitioners providing these services to households.

P22: Record the amount of money spent in Ksh on capital expenditure on items like cattle sheds, paddocks and for purchase of mechanical equipments like tractor, pick-ups, ox-ploughs etc.

P23: Record the quantity of products listed that were produced in the last 1month. In all cases, use units that can be standardized. If a HH slaughters a chicken for consumption, this should be reported in P07. If the HH slaughters chicken for sale, this should be reported in P23-P26. Same for the other livestock.

P24: Record how much of the produce was sold (see codes) and the value of sales in KShs earned from the sale of produce in the last 1month.

P25: To whom was the produce sold?

P26: How much of produce was given out during the last 1month.

5.17 SECTION Q: HOUSEHOLD ENTERPRISES

Respondent: Head of household and household members managing income-generating establishments of household.

Purpose of section
This section collects detailed information on the ownership and operation of any income generating enterprises/Establishments by the survey household that were in operation over the past one month. Each row of the section on the questionnaire represents one household establishment. Below are some useful concepts.

1. Establishment: An establishment is defined as a specific location in which a clearly defined economic activity is undertaken. It is generally at a single location and engaged predominantly in one type of economic activity. Thus, a large firm or enterprise with branches would have one of such branches referred to as an establishment because of its unique location and economic activity undertaken in that location. Examples of establishments are a factory producing leather goods at a specific work site, and a school providing educational services at a given site. Where a single location (work site) encompasses two or more distinct activities, these are treated as separate establishments, provided that separate payroll records are available.

2. Business/Enterprise/Firm: The terms are used interchangeably to refer to an economic unit producing goods or providing services. They are entities under whose umbrella an establishment operates. Examples include factories, banks, kiosks, agricultural farms or holdings, taxis, hawkers, etc.

3. Wages and Salaries: The concept includes gross wages and salaries relating to a given period include remuneration for time worked including overtime, piece-work, bonuses, remunerate according to the law for hours not worked (particularly holidays, sick leave and maternity), and extra payments for dirty, dangerous or unpleasant work and supplements for night work. Wages and salaries also include author’s royalties and payments to workers giving apprenticeship courses or themselves receiving
training. On the other hand, wages and salaries do not include exceptional bonuses, travel expenses, the cost of special clothing or footwear, and social insurance payments.

4. Incomes and Revenue: Household income consists of all receipts which accrue to the household or its individual members. It is the sum of primary income (consisting of income from paid and self employment); property income (consisting of imputed rents of owner-occupied dwellings, interest received and paid, dividends received, and net rents and royalties received for the use of buildings, land, copyrights and patents); current transfers (consisting of social security benefits, pensions and life insurance annuity benefits, alimonies etc.); and other benefits received by all the members of the household.

5. Income from Paid Employment: The term includes wages and salaries and other earnings received in cash and kind on regular basis. Earnings cover all payments which employees receive in respect of their work, whether in cash or in kind, remuneration for time not worked paid by the employer (excluding severance and termination pay) and other benefits and allowances. Other benefits and allowances include bonuses and gratuities, and housing and family allowances paid by the employer directly to his employee.

6. Income from Self-employment: This refers to net entrepreneurial income, i.e. return to the labour input of the self-employed. This is obtained by subtracting operating expenses from gross output. Gross output may be defined as value of all goods and services produced, including any part which has been retained for own consumption or given free of charge or at reduced prices to hired labour. For example, gross output of a farm would be the total value of the produce (i.e. value of produce sold plus value of stocks retained for own consumption and value of any produce given as part of wages to hired labour).

7. Total or Gross Income: It is income before taxes and other compulsory deduction such as social security contributions Gross income from paid employment is value of wages or salaries plus all associated allowances and benefits before regular deductions are made. Gross income from farm or business establishment consists of total revenue before taxation and depreciation allowance.

8. Expenses (operating costs): These include operating costs such as payments to hired labour in cash and or in kind, and other current expenses incurred by the economic activity, such as the purchase of raw materials, fuel, tools and equipment, rent and interest payments, transport costs, and marketing expenses.

The section is initially to be administered to the household head. For last month only, find out from operators of informal sector activities about expenses and revenue of their businesses. Also obtain the source and amount of initial investment in the business.

Once the income generating establishments operated by household members are identified in Q03 to Q06, the household member(s) who manages the establishment should be the respondent to the questions that follow on a particular household establishment. Note that the household establishments considered here are non-agricultural. Farming and animal husbandry should not be included here, as these sorts of income-generating establishments have been sufficiently covered in Sections N through P.

Q01: This is a filter question for the entire section. If no member of the household operated a non-agricultural income-generating establishment during the past month, the rest of this section is skipped.

- A household enterprise is a segment of the economy typically comprised of small-scale producers and distributors of goods and services, and consisting largely of independent, self-employed producers. It is an informal-sector business and tend to operate with very little capital; to use a low level of technology and skills; and to provide low incomes and unstable employment.
Household non-agricultural income-generating enterprises include those that produce or trade goods or services, including owning a shop or operated a trading business, no matter how small.

However, post-harvest processing and trading of agricultural crops should be listed here.

Enterprises might include, for example, fishing; making mats, bricks, or charcoal; working as a carpenter; firewood selling; shoe shining; metalwork; tailoring; repair work; food processing, fish marketing, petty trading, and so on.

**Q03:** All establishments should be listed here before the other questions are asked about each one. The description should be short and sufficient to inform the supervisor in what sort of industry the establishment should be classified.


- The coding that the supervisor will use to classify the household income-generating establishments listed will be the industry codes that are found in appendix V.

**Q04:** Type of establishment in terms of number of products produced or services rendered.

- Is it a single product industry or mixed.

- Record only ONE response.

**Q05:** The owner of the household establishment is noted here. This question refers to household members who are owners. Non-household members employees are coded in Q06. Space is provided for up to two owners.

**Q06:** Record the number of other owners who are not household members.

**Q07:** The manager(s) of the household income generating activity is noted here. Although in most cases they will be the same individual, you should not assume that the owner and the manager will always be the same person. Space is provided for up to two managers. The questions on this income generating activity that follow should be asked of the manager.

**Q08:** The reference period for Section Q are those household income generating activities that were in operation over the past one month. Once these economic activities have been identified, the question seeks for the number of months the activity has been in operation in the past 12 months.

**Q09:** Refers to location of operation of the establishment. Several choices are given and code only ONE option. If operating in several locations, record where which location is the most important. This can be in terms of income generated from sale of items or any other criteria household deems fit.

**Q10:** Number of years in operation. If over 2 years, record only the years. If less than 2 years of operation, record both year and months

**Q11:** The question seeks for the registration status of the business. If the respondent does not know if the establishment is registered with the registrar of companies do not probe. Simply note the response as “does not know”. Excessive probing on this question may unnecessarily cause worry for the respondent.

**Q12:** This question only concerns workers in the establishment who are household members. List how many males and females. If none, enter ‘0’.

**Q13:** This question only concerns workers in the establishment in the last one month who are not household members. List the number of males and females. If none, enter ‘0’.
Q14: This question asks approximate number of hours worked by those engaged in the establishment.

Q15: The question concerns main source of funds used to start up the household establishment. If there are multiple sources, list up to 3 sources from which the largest amount of money was obtained. Note that a ‘loan’ needs to be formally repaid, while a ‘gift’ does not. Sale of assets owned means that the owner sold some item of value in order to obtain the money needed to begin the household establishment. ‘Proceeds from another business’ are the profits earned in another establishment in which the owner of the household establishment is engaged. If no start-up capital was required, respond ‘none’ (code 11). Examples of non-agricultural credit institutions are K-Rep, Faulu Kenya etc.

Q16: The value reported here should be the total sale of the output or proceeds from services by each establishment – not the average price received.

Q17: Operating/business costs are expenses incurred to run a business. The business costs are split into various categories. Probe to get as much information as possible by the various breakdowns. If completely unknown, write the aggregate costs – not the average price received. If none, enter ‘0’. Divide the amount by 12 if licenses are paid on an annual basis, i.e. for twelve months. Purchases of business wares and goods for re-sale refers to purchases of finished goods such as clothing and footwear either for wholesale or retailing.

Q18: Information sought here is on who makes use of the services and/or good provided by the household establishment. ‘Final consumers’ indicates that the establishment is retail-oriented. The other response codes specified indicate that the establishment is wholesale-oriented. ‘Institutions’ would include schools, hospitals, prisons, and the like. If ‘Manufacturers’, the establishment provides unfinished products or raw materials to other establishments who use them as part of the process of creating a final product for the market.

Q19: The question collects information on revenue earned or the losses incurred by the household establishment.

Q20: If a loss is reported, this must be put in parentheses () to indicate clearly to the data entry clerk that the value being reported is a negative number.

5.18 SECTION R: TRANSFERS

This section collects aggregated and general information on gifts received and gifts made by the household over the past 12 months. The gifts received and given are disaggregated as cash, food, and other in-kind.

Respondent: Head of household or most knowledgeable household members

Purpose of section
The purpose of this section is to capture any income that a household may have received or given in form of a gift: that was not in return of goods or services offered by member(s) of the household to the source of the gift.

Definitions: A transfer is a transaction in which an individual/household/institution provides good/service/asset to another individual/household/institution without receiving from the latter any good/service/asset in return as counterpart.
The transfer (gift) may be in cash or in Kind. In -cash transfer means assistance that come in form of currency or transferable deposits (e.g. cheque, money orders etc) while in-kind transfer means goods or service assistance that is not in form of cash: transfer of ownership of goods/assets or supply of services for free (e.g. free medical check up, free provision of labour etc).

Goods are physical objects for which a demand exists, over which ownership rights can be established and whose ownership can be transferred.

Services are outputs produced and typically result to changes in the conditions of the consuming unit. E.g. Cleaning, medical, legal services etc

**Individuals-** any person who is not member of the household

**Non Profit Institutions (NPIs) --** are social entities created for purposes of producing goods and services and are not meant to profit those who finance or manage them. Usually they give the goods or services for free or sell them at prices that are not economically significant. Examples are Religious organizations, NGO's etc.

**Corporate sector --** are legal entities that are created for purposes of producing goods or services for the market. They are profit making entities for those who own/manage them e.g. Banks etc

**Outside Kenya --** any person or institution resident outside the Kenyan territory. Kenyan embassies/missions are considered to be within Kenyan territory

In estimating the value of food, services and in-kind gifts received and given, the respondent should estimate what he or she would have to pay for the gift if they purchased it in the open market.

**R01:** Did the household (or any member of the household) receive or give any gifts whether in cash or kind during the last 12 months. If YES record 1. If record NO record 2 and skip to R10.

**R02:** Establish if during the last 12 months the household or any member received any gift from any source outside the household. Thus gifts received from a member of the same household should not be captured. Source refers to where the gift came from and includes individuals, NPIs, Corporate sector and any source outside the country.
If YES, record 1. If NO record 2 and skip to R06.

**R03:** Record the amount of cash (in Kshs) received against the relevant source(s). If the household received cash in dollars (or any other currency) from abroad convert into Kshs and insert this against the column for Outside Kenya. Probe to find out how much it was in Kshs.

**R04:** Indicate the value of any food received for free in this column against the relevant source. If for example, the household received one bag of maize, use the price of a bag of maize (within that area) as the estimate. Probe to find out how much the bag would have cost.

**R05:** Record the value of any other in-kind gift received by the household or any member of the household within the last 12 months. Other in-kind means any gifts other than those recorded under R03 and R04. If it was a service indicate the estimated value of the service.

**R06:** Indicate if the household donated any kind of gift (in cash or in kind) to individuals or other household in the last 12 months.

**R07:** Record the total amount given out by the household in form of cash, cheque or money orders.
R08: Put the total value of all gifts given out by the household in form of food donations in the last 12 months. If the respondents only remember the amount in volumes (e.g. bags, debes, packets etc) use the prices for similar measures to estimate the values. An approximate value is sufficient if the respondent cannot recall the actual value. If none write '0'.

R09: In this column enter the total value of any other donations not captured in column R07 and R08 over the period of 12 months. If none write '0'.

R10: The question intends to capture any member(s) of the household belonging to a self-help group. Check the ID Code from the Household Roster and record it in this column.

R11: For each member in the household who belongs to a self-help group indicate the type against the corresponding ID Code. Thus if the member in ID Code 1 in R10 belongs to a religious-related self-help group put 4 in ID Code 1 of R11. You can indicate up to 4 types of self help groups which a member belongs to.

Self-help groups are entities typically established by people with the intentions of uplifting their living standards by pooling resources together. Examples of self-help groups is merry-go-round, social welfare etc.

5.19 SECTION S: OTHER INCOME

Respondent: Head of household or knowledgeable member of the household

Purpose of Section
Information has already been collected on income from employment, from agriculture, livestock, household enterprises and transfers. This section collects quite aggregated and general information on other income sources for the household. The reference period for this section is the last 12 months. Only if the household received income from one of the income sources considered in this section over the past 12 months, should it be noted.

S01: This question enables the interviewer to establish if any member of the household received any income not captured in the other sections. If none, write 2 in the box and go to the next section.

S02: If any member(s) receive(s) any regular income (e.g. interest from bank deposits, dividends from holding of corporate ownership of shares, profits from investments) record 1 and proceed to S03, if no record 2 and skip to S04.

S03: Under this column record the total amount received by all members of the household from the sources in S02.

S04: The question establishes if any member of the household receives income from a pension scheme. This income refers to monies received under retirement benefits. These benefits are usually for specific group of retirees, mainly from age group 55 yrs and above on retirement. However, there are some cases where people under the age of 55 yrs receive pension.

Pension income is that income provided to retired workers. Most commonly pensions are those provided to retired public servants. However, larger private commercial firms will also provide pensions for their long-term serving employees who have retired. Depending on the program, pension payments sometimes may be made to the surviving spouse or other dependents of the retiree. Be sure to make inquiries about this possibility.
• If NO, skip to S06

**S05:** In this column enter the total amount received by the household from pension incomes i.e. sum of all the amounts received by all persons, who receive pension, of this household in the last month.

**S06:** Any amount receivable by the household from lease of fixed assets except that from lease of agricultural land. Please note that rental also includes leasing. These assets include residential and non-residential buildings, machinery, cash crops (e.g. miraa, tea, sugar) etc. It also includes rent received from leasing land and subsoil assets.

*Subsoil assets* are proven reserves of mineral deposits located on or below the earth’s surface. They must be exploitable with the current technology and must also be economically viable. In this case any a household has leased the mineral deposits then the amount received should be recorded under appropriate column in S07.

If no write 2 and skip to S09.

**S07:** Identifies the type of the source of rental income recorded under S06.
• Accept values given by respondent do not bother household to get the exact details. An approximate is equally important.

**S08:** The column seeks to establish if there is any other source income other than those recorded in S02, S04 and S06. These sources may include incomes from copyrights (e.g. books, music, etc) royalties, artistic assets, staggered payments from insurance policy, court judgement etc. If NO, proceed to the next section.

**S09:** Identifies the type of income recorded under S08. List the two main ones; this should be the types that bring in the highest incomes.

**S10:** Sum (aggregate) of all incomes (monthly) from sources under S08

**S11:** The column seeks to establish if there are any members in the HH who receive none regular income *example if you win a charity sweepstake. If No skip to next section.*

**S12:** Describe the type of income.

**S13:** Sums (aggregate) of all incomes from non-regular income

---

**5.20 SECTION T: RECENT SHOCKS TO HOUSEHOLD WELFARE**

**Respondent:** Head of household or most knowledgeable household member.

**Purpose of section**
This section collects information on household shocks, referred to here as negative economic and social impact on Household, resulting from an event/occurrence that negatively affected the welfare of the household. Such shocks may not be economic nor necessarily wholly negative in their nature, but amongst the effects is a reduction in the economic welfare of the household.

Each line of the section refers to one specific shock. The reference period is the last five years.

**T02:** A list of 18 types of shocks is provided. There is space for two additional shocks which should be specified. You should ask the household head whether the household was negatively affected, in
terms of household welfare, by the occurrence of each of the events listed over the last five years. If the household did not experience a shock, skip to next shock. You should go through the entire list in T02 before continuing with the rest of the section.

Note that some households will experience some shocks negatively, while others will experience the same shock without any negative effects. Probe to find out the effect of the shock and exclude those that boosted or improved the household welfare.

Consequently, do not assume that the occurrence in a household of an event listed in T02 will necessarily be considered as a negative ‘shock’ by the head of household. For example, the birth of a child may have different impacts on welfare of a household. On one hand, some HH will not be affected but on the other hand, especially in a poor household the birth of a child may cause hardship for the household. The effects of the additional costs associated with the new individual in the household may be sufficiently severe to cause a reduction in the health status of household members, including the infant. The household may be unable to provide sufficient health care for the ill child.

Similarly multiple births (twins and more) can also affect household resources making it difficult for the household to cope financially and socially. However, in a wealthy household, the birth of a child will likely cause not much reduction in welfare for the household, or at least an insufficient reduction to cause any economic hardship.

T03: Of all the shocks experienced, rank the main/major three(3) that severely affected household welfare. If only three shocks or less were identified in T01, have the respondent rank all of them.

Review with the respondent the negative shocks that the respondent noted as having been experienced by the household over the last five years. Have the respondent select which was the most severe, 2nd most severe and 3rd most severe shock experienced.

The significance/severity of a shock is with regard to the reduction in household welfare caused by the shock. The most severe shock is that experienced over the last five years that led to the greatest reduction in the welfare of the household. Fill in only these three most severe shocks and leave all the other cells in T03 blank.

T04 to T08: Ask these questions only for the major/main three shocks for which rankings are provided in T03.

T04: Ask the respondent to give you an estimate value of loss due to shock. Do not bother household to get the exact details. An approximate value is sufficient.

T05: The question concerns the economic impact of the shock to household.
Only ONE response is required.
- A reduction in income refers to a decline/decrease in the amount of cash or other resources (e.g., earnings from harvests from household parcels) previously earned by the household before the shock.
- A reduction in income comes about through a reduction in the ability of household members to earn income. This may come about through the death or long-term illness of an economically productive member of the household, so his or her wages or the other economic resources he or she produces for the household are lost to the household or a significantly reduced.
- Alternatively, the loss of productive assets will also result in a reduction in income. The loss of cropland or livestock will result in the income or the other economic resources that the land or the livestock provided the household being lost or significantly reduced. In such cases where productive assets are lost, both an income loss and an asset loss are experienced.
• A reduction in assets refers to a reduction in the amount of goods that the household possesses/owns. These goods may either be productive – land, livestock, agricultural and other work tools – or non-productive – house, furniture, transport, and other durable goods.
• Assets may be lost directly – as through a fire that destroys some physical assets owned by the household – or indirectly, whereby the household faces an economic shock and sells or otherwise disposes some of their assets to cope with the economic difficulty.
• A reduction in non-productive assets reduces the ability of the household to cope with additional negative economic shocks. Such assets constitute storehouses of wealth that can be sold when needed to increase the resources (cash or other economic resources) available to the household in times of difficulty.

Alternatively, the shock may cause a loss in the income-earning ability of the household. In order to cope with the loss of income, the household may sell or otherwise dispose of some of their assets to cope with the loss of income they are facing, doing their best to maintain an adequate level of welfare. In the end, both income and assets are lost to the household.

T06: This question seeks to determine how widespread the shock was felt within the community. Read out the record and code appropriately. Only ONE response is required.

While a drought may negatively affect all farming households in a community, the death of an individual may only affect the household of which the individual was a member.

‘Some other HHs too’ should be used as the answer code if more than the respondent’s household was affected, but less than half of the households in the community were affected.

‘Most HHs in community’ should be used if more than half, but not all of the households in the community were affected.

T07: How long ago was the shock?  
Note that the recall period for this section is the last 5 years. Consequently, the answer to T06 should be 5 years or less. For example if shock occurred four (4) years and 6 months ago, code record 4 under the years column and enter 6 under the months column.

T08: This question refers to the actions/intervention mechanisms undertaken by the household members to cope with the shock in a bid to regain their welfare status. The interviewer should list up to 3 responses given by respondent by order of importance i.e. starting with what the respondent viewed as the most effective or important response.

There are 25 response codes listed in the coding scheme. You as the interviewer should become familiar with these codes so that you can easily and accurately characterize the responses to the shock noted by the respondent.

5.21 SECTION U: CREDIT

Respondent: Head of household and household members who are benefiting from loans received.

Purpose of section
This section collects information on credit for business or farming purposes received by or sought by household members over the past 12 months. The household head and the persons responsible for the loans received by the household should be the respondents. The credit could either have been taken in the form of cash or of in-kind goods, such as agricultural inputs. The credit may have been obtained from an informal source, such as a relative or a local money lender (shylock). However, there must be an
explicit agreement between the lender and the household member who took the credit that the loan would be repaid within a certain period of time and/or with the addition of a specific interest charge on top of the principal amount of the credit. Consequently, gifts should not be listed here, nor should items received under transfer programs, such as the Re-stocking, Relief etc.

For the purpose of this section, a credit is an arrangement in which a lender gives money or property to a borrower, and the borrower agrees to return the property or repay the money, along with interest if applicable, at some future point(s) in time. There is a usually a predetermined time for repaying a loan, and generally the lender has to bear the risk that the borrower may not repay a loan (though modern capital markets have developed many ways of managing this risk).

As this section is difficult to capture, do take time to be familiar with the concepts used herein.

**U01:** Establishes if any member of the household borrowed money or inputs from any person other members of the household or from an institution. Inputs include farm inputs (e.g. seeds, fertilizer etc), goods for re-sale (e.g. for business like a shop).

Institutions include banks, financial institutions (Cooperative societies, Agricultural Finance Corporation etc), mortgage etc. If none skip to U12.

**U02:** Indicate the serial numbers of the individuals/institutions

**U03:** The names of person(s) or institutions who lend to the members of the household. E.g. if somebody from the household borrowed from a friend from outside the household called John, while another member borrowed from KCB then list John and KCB.

**U04:** Using the codes provided (lower right of the page) indicate the code of the source of the loan. E.g. 01 for KCB and 07 for John.

**U05:** Record ID code of the person who borrowed. The ID Code should correspond to the source from which the member borrowed. If the person borrowed from more than one source indicate his/her ID Code against all the sources.

**U06:** Reason for asking loan is a difficult question; so do probe to get an accurate response. Do not lead respondent. Let respondent tell interviewer main use of loan even if loan had several uses. Establish the purpose for which the loan was borrowed. Thus if a member borrowed for purposes of buying land, record 05 in the row corresponding to his ID Code.

**U07:** Indicate the value (amount in Ksh) of credit borrowed. If the loan was in form of inputs establish the value; for instance if the input was fertilizer ask the amount borrowed and the price per unit could be used to determine the value. Thus Value=quantity*unit price

However, the estimation should only be done if the respondent does not know the value or cannot estimate independently.

**U08:** Indicate the month and the year when the member acquired the loan, e.g. if a person got the loan in August 2004, then put 08 for the month and 2004 for the year.

**U09:** Interest rate is the fee charged by a lender to a borrower for the use of borrowed money, usually expressed as an annual percentage of the principal. The rate is dependent upon the time value of money, the credit risk of the borrower, and the inflation rate. Establish if the loan was to attract an interest. If the rate of interest was for example 12.6 per cent per year put 12 in the 1st cell and 6 in the second cell.
Some lenders may not use these factors to determine the rate. For example if one borrowed Kshs 1,000 which he/she is supposed to pay back at a total of Kshs. 1,100 in one month, then the rate of interest would be computed as follows

\[ IR = \frac{(1,100-1000) \times 100\%}{1000} = 10\% \text{ per month} \]

Which translate into 120% per year.

**U10:** Duration within which the loan was to be re-paid. If for example the loan was to be paid within 3 years, put 36 in the 1st cell of U10.

**U11:** Record the balance (of the initial loan) that is still unpaid e.g. if the loan was Ksh. 100,000 and Ksh. 40,000 has already been paid back then the outstanding amount is 100,000-40,000 = 60,000.

**U12:** If a member of the household had during the last 12 months attempted to borrow (from outside the household) but was denied a loan. If yes, put 1. If no, put 2 and skip to U14. If still waiting for results put 3 and move to next Section.

**U13:** Using the codes provided (lower right) list the code of the individual/institution that turned down the loan request to the member. E.g. if a friend and a bank say Barclays turned the member down put 07 in the 1st cell and 01 in the 2nd cell.

**U14:** For each member who answered NO in U12 list a maximum of 2 reasons why he/she never tried to borrow. The 1st reason should be the major one while the 2nd should be the second most important.
Appendix I
GPS coordinates

- The Geographical Positioning System (G.P.S.) is constellation of 24 satellites that provides information to a GPS receiver. GPS receivers take this information and uses triangulation to calculate the object’s exact position, i.e. the software in the receiver can determine the exact position in 3 dimensions (altitude, latitude and longitude). It is a navigation tool that can locate the exact position of one anywhere in the world. In this survey, each household will be geo-referenced (defined geographical boundary). This will allow the linking the household information to secondary information (land use, roads and other infrastructure) at the analysis and tabulation stage. Additionally, it will ease the finding of the geo-referenced households' in future follow-up surveys.

- Pressing the “light-bulb” button until the receiver turns on turns on the G.P.S. unit. A welcome page appears while the unit conducts a self-test. Once testing is complete, the Satellite page appears. When sufficient satellite signals have been acquired, the Position Page replaces the Satellite Page.

Satellite Page
- The Satellite Page shows satellite positions and signal strength. Satellite positions are displayed using two circles and a centre point, which indicate the location of the satellites. The bottom of the page contains a row of signal strength bars corresponding to each satellite being used.
- The Satellite Page displays the status of various receiver functions. The status information will help you understand what the G.P.S. is doing at any given time, and will tell you whether or not the receiver has calculated a precise position fix. The sky views and signal strength bars give you an indication of what satellites are visible to the receiver, whether or not they are being used to calculate a position fix, and the signal quality. When the receiver is looking for a particular satellite, the corresponding signal strength bar will be blank and the sky view indicator highlighted. Once the receiver has found the satellite, a hollow signal strength bar appears, indicating that the satellite has been found and that the receiver is collecting data from it. The satellite number in the sky view no longer appears highlighted. As soon as the GPS has collected the necessary data to calculate a fix, the status field will indicate a 2D or 3D status. Both the Satellite page and the Receiver need to precisely synchronize their pseudo-random codes to make the system work.
- The receiver status is indicated at the top left of the page, with the current horizontal accuracy (estimated in position error, in feet or meters) at the top right. The status shows the following conditions:
  - "searching": the GPS looks for any available satellites in view.
  - "auto-locate": the GPS initializes and collects new data. This process can take five minutes, depending on the satellites currently in view.
  - "acquiring": the receiver collects data from available satellites, but has not collected enough data to calculate a precise position fix.
  - 2D Nav (2D Navigation): at least three satellites with good geometry have been locked onto and a 2-dimensional fix (longitude and latitude) is calculated.
  - 3D Nav (3D Navigation): at least four satellites with good geometry have been locked onto and your position is now being calculated in latitude, longitude, and altitude.
  - Poor Cvg (Poor GPS coverage): the receiver is not tracking enough satellites for a 2D or 3D fix due to bad satellite geometry.
  - Not Usable: the receiver is unusable, possibly due to incorrect initialization or abnormal satellite conditions. Turn the unit off and back on to reset, and reinitialize if necessary.
- The Satellite Page features a battery level indicator, located to the left of the sky view, which displays the strength of the unit’s batteries.
- The Satellite Page also provides access to the Initialization Screen whenever a position fix has not been calculated. This page allows one to initialize the coordinates. To access the initialization page, press "enter" from the Satellite Page before any satellites are acquired. The GPS typically acquires a position fast enough that initialization is not required. However, initialization may be necessary after memory loss or when the receiver has been moved for a significant distance. Additionally, it may be necessary
to initialize the unit the first time you use it, if it does not acquire a fix after the first few minutes. The
Initialization Screen will appear automatically if the GPS is used for the first time.

- In the situations described above, the initialization page may appear prompting an icon of any one of
these two initialization methods:
  - "Select country": allows one to initialize the receiver by selecting present position from a list of
countries in the internal database. This typically provides a position fix in less than three minutes.
  - "Autolocate": allows the GPS to initialize itself and calculate a position fix without knowing
your present position. This usually provides a position fix in 3-5 minutes.

- If one chooses autolocate, the GPS will begin searching the appropriate satellites for your location.
  You can verify that you have acquired a position by watching the Satellite Page transition to the
Position Page (provided you haven't pressed any other buttons) or by looking for a "2D NAV" or
"3D NAV" status at the top-left corner of the Satellite Page. If the initialization page has not
automatically appeared on the Satellite Page, press the "Enter" key.
  If trouble in initializing the receiver or acquiring a position, check the following:
  - Does the unit have a clear view of the sky? If there are large buildings or mountains nearby, or if
there is heavy tree cover, the receiver may not be receiving enough satellite signals to calculate a
position.
    - Have you selected the right country (i.e. Kenya) from the initialization list? Check for the correct
approximate latitude/longitude on the Position Page, or re-select the appropriate country from the
list to restart initialization.
  - Have one moved over a significant distance since one last used the receiver i.e. changed position? In
  this case one has to reinitialize the receiver.

**Position Page**

- The Position Page shows where one is, what direction one is heading and how fast one is moving.
The top of the page contains a compass tape that is a graphic representation of one’s heading. Track
is the compass direction representing one course over the ground, or the direction that one is
moving. The speed is measured in miles per hour.
- The rest of the page shows one’s current position in three dimensions: latitude, longitude, and
altitude.
- The current latitude and longitude are expressed in degrees and minutes. The numbers that you will
see are of the form: N 00°03.395' and E 032°27.928'. This is the information that has to be
recorded against item GPS Coordinates in the questionnaire. Altitude is expressed in feet above sea
level (e.g. 3939 ft). You will notice that these numbers change continuously. Just record the number
at the point where minor changes are noticed. The GPS unit takes some time, about three minutes to
stabilize.
- Other pages exist on the GPS but they are of no use in this survey. Special remarks – Any comments
that may have affected the interview outcome must be printed here.
## Appendix II
### District and Provincial Codes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PROVINCE</th>
<th>DISTRICT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N/Eastern</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101</td>
<td>Nairobi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201</td>
<td>Kiambu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>202</td>
<td>Kirinyaga</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>203</td>
<td>Muranga</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>204</td>
<td>Nyandarua</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>205</td>
<td>Nyeri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>206</td>
<td>Thika</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>207</td>
<td>Maragua</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Central</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>301</td>
<td>Kilifi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>302</td>
<td>Kwale</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>303</td>
<td>Lamu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>304</td>
<td>Mombasa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>305</td>
<td>Taita Taveta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>306</td>
<td>Tana River</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>307</td>
<td>Malindi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COAST</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>401</td>
<td>Embu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>402</td>
<td>Isiolo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>403</td>
<td>Kitui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>404</td>
<td>Makueni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>405</td>
<td>Machakos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>406</td>
<td>Marsabit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>407</td>
<td>Mbeere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>408</td>
<td>Meru Central</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>409</td>
<td>Moyale</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>410</td>
<td>Mwingi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>411</td>
<td>Nyambene</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>412</td>
<td>Tharaka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>413</td>
<td>Meru South</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASTERN</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>501</td>
<td>Garissa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>502</td>
<td>Mandera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>503</td>
<td>Wajir</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| NYANZA   |                   |
| 701      | Baringo           |
| 702      | Bomet             |
| 703      | Keiyo             |
| 704      | Kajiado           |
| 705      | Kericho           |
| 706      | Koibatek          |
| 707      | Laikipia          |
| 708      | Marakwet          |
| 709      | Nakuru            |
| 710      | Nandi             |
| 711      | Narok             |
| 712      | Samburu           |
| 713      | Trans Mara        |
| 714      | Trans Nzoia       |
| 715      | Turkana           |
| 716      | Uasin Gishu       |
| 717      | West Pokot        |
| 718      | Buret             |

| RIFT VALLEY |                   |
| 801         | Bungoma           |
| 802         | Busia             |
| 803         | Mt. Elgon         |
| 804         | Kakamega          |
| 805         | Lugari            |
| 806         | Teso              |
| 807         | Vihiga            |
| 808         | Butere/Mumias     |

### Other Countries

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>900</th>
<th>Other Africa</th>
<th>935</th>
<th>France</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>901</td>
<td>Uganda</td>
<td>936</td>
<td>Scandinavia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>902</td>
<td>Tanzania</td>
<td>940</td>
<td>Other America</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>903</td>
<td>Central Africa</td>
<td>941</td>
<td>USA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>904</td>
<td>West Africa</td>
<td>942</td>
<td>Canada</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>905</td>
<td>North Africa</td>
<td>950</td>
<td>Australia &amp; New Zealand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>906</td>
<td>South Africa</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>907</td>
<td>Kenya</td>
<td>960</td>
<td>Other Countries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>910</td>
<td>Other Asia</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>911</td>
<td>Japan</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>912</td>
<td>India</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>913</td>
<td>Middle East</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>914</td>
<td>China</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>930</td>
<td>Other Europe</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>931</td>
<td>Germany</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>932</td>
<td>Switzerland</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>933</td>
<td>United kingdom</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>934</td>
<td>Italy</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Appendix III
Calendar of Events

CENTRAL PROVINCE KIAMBU

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>YEAR</th>
<th>EVENT/AGE GROUP</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1900</td>
<td>Ngarugu Famine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1901</td>
<td>Gatego – Venereal disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1902</td>
<td>Kamande Gatiti – Tray</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1903</td>
<td>Kibango</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1904</td>
<td>Njege – Porcupine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1905</td>
<td>Kanyutu – Tiger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1906</td>
<td>Nyarigi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1907</td>
<td>Kangei</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1908</td>
<td>Matiba – Maize gruel kabau</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1909</td>
<td>Thigingi – Barbed Wire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1910</td>
<td>Makio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1911</td>
<td>Ugimbi – Millet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1912</td>
<td>Mwande – Girl play</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1913</td>
<td>Kihiu Mwiri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1914</td>
<td>Rememo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1915</td>
<td>Ngakia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1916</td>
<td>Ngombera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1917</td>
<td>Njanjo – Vaccination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1918</td>
<td>Githoguo Ndaama – Band</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1919</td>
<td>Kimiri – Kind of disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1920</td>
<td>Iguta Kibandi – Identity Card</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1921</td>
<td>Munada – Cattle dip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1922</td>
<td>Munoti – Money notes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1923</td>
<td>Ciringi – Introduction of shilling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1924</td>
<td>Githigu – Kind og large maize</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1925</td>
<td>Munai – Ear beads</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1926</td>
<td>Mianduma – Darkness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1927</td>
<td>Ndege – Aeroplane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1928</td>
<td>Githingithia – Earthquake</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1929</td>
<td>Nderece</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1930</td>
<td>Mamboleo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1931</td>
<td>Marpnp – Kind of game</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1932</td>
<td>Njane Kanini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1933</td>
<td>Njenduru – Gentleman</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1934</td>
<td>Ndururu – Five cents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1935</td>
<td>Tauru – Towel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1936</td>
<td>Kenya Bathi – Kenya Bus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1937</td>
<td>Kababa Njabani – Japanese goods</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1938</td>
<td>Thukia Itaha</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1939</td>
<td>Korenji – College</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1940</td>
<td>Micuthi ya Mbia – Tails of rats</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1941</td>
<td>Muthuu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1942</td>
<td>Njau ya ki – Kind of dance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1943</td>
<td>Mwanga – Cassava</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1944</td>
<td>Muomboko – dance Cician Bangi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1945</td>
<td>Gician Bangi - Burning of weeds</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1946    NJata – Star
1947    Ngoma Kibirirti – Kind of dance
1948    Haraka
1948    Haraka
1949    Kanyoi – Razor Blade
1950    Muhehenjeku - an epidemic
1951    Thuthu
1952    Warurungana
1953    Komera – Hiding
1954    Gotora – Shotgun
1955    Therenda – Surrender
1956    Cheni – Demarcation
1957    Ruthario – Rosary
1958    Mubutiti – Boundary
1959    Ngeith cia Thayu
1960    K.A.N.U. - Kanu – part
1961    Munyongoro- Millepede
1962    Mbuiai
1963    Uhuru – Freedom
1964    Jamuhuri – Republic
1965    Gathirikari – Yellow Maize
1966    Coka Migundai – go back to land
1967    Witeithio wa muingi – Self Help
1968    Taiti – Tight dress

**KIRINYAGA**

**Year Event**

1901    Arrival of Bw. Kirianjahi
1909    Famine – Wangara
1909    1 Ruppee hut tax
1912    2 Ruppee hut tax
1912    Native tribunal court started
1912    Mutira Mission started
1914    First World War Started
1916    Chief Karuri Died
1916    Motor – Car seen the first time in the former Embu District
1917    Strong round men were forced to join the First World War(lazima)
1917    Employment of Forest Guards
1918    End of First World War
1918    famine of ‘Kimotho’
1920    Kenya became a colony
1921    Issue of identity cards (Kipande)
1921    Kikuyu Central association
1922    Introduction of a shilling
1922    Harry Thuku was arrested
1923    C.C.M Kerugoya Mission was built
1924    Burial of dead bodies (Guthika cimba)
1924    Fort Hall Agricultural Show
1925    Thika – Nanyuki Railway
1926    eclipse of the sun Utuku-Muthenya)
1927    Kerugoya Hospital was opened
1927    First Aeroplane seen
1927 Earth tremor (Githingithia)
1928 Kiendano’ Locust invasion
1929 Dispute between Missionaries over circumcision of girls
1930 Return of Kenyatta
1931 Sale of Wattle Bank introduced
1932 Soil Conservation campaign
1933 Cotton was first planted at Kandondo in Kirinyaga
1933 Kikuyu’s from Kiambu and Nyeri came to settle in the former Embu District ‘Ahol’
1933 Irungu age group ruled instead of Mwangi age group
1934 Introduction of fine cents
1934 First coffee in the former Embu District was planted at Kithunguri block
1934 Nakambaba Machakos and Kitui asked for dwelling place in Mwea
1941 Karatina factory started (macini ya Mboga
1936 Ngiciri’age
1936 Rat proofing of grain stores (Mbia)
1938 Large tax collection in Nairobi
1939 Beginning of Second World war
1940 Kerugoya Factory
1940 Sagana bridge was built
1941 Karatina factory started
1942 Raising of hut tax to Shs.14 and exemption of women
1942 L.N.C. Embu Hospital was opened
1943 Famine ‘Ngarugu ya mianga’
1944 Kibata or Jabani I
1945 End of Second World war
1946 Return of Demobilized soldiers Old End bridge was built
1947 Comick Star (Njata Ikiguka)
1948 End of Kerugoya/Karatina factory (Muico wa macini cia mboga)
1948 Chief Njega Gioko Died
1951 Objection of rinderpest inoculation and burning of cattle crushes (Njanjo)
1952 Emergency declared
1953 Formation of Home Guard and building of posts in sub-locations (Kiberi)
1953 The clash between Embu and Mbere tribe (Gutinio matu)
1953 Death of Matenjagwo
1954 Murder of District Officer Mr. Candler in Murang’a District and Death of General Kago’
1954 Operation ‘Anvil’ Murang’a District
1955 Start of Land consolidation
1956 Return of detainees and Registration of Loyalist Voters
1957 First General election
1958 K.K.M First Youth Clubs
1958 Late Chief Njagi Muthang’ata died
1960 End of emergency and Pass Regulations
1960 formation of K.A.N.U.
1961 General Election and Release of Kenyatta
1961 Locust Invasion (Ngigi cia Kaharata)
1961 floods (Mafriko)
1961 Famine of ‘Kimbo’
1962 Lancaster House conference for Kenya’s Independence
1963 Internal Self Government
1963 Independence
1964 Kenya became a Republic
1965 Famine yellow maize
1966 Formation of K.P.U.
1969 Population Census
1970  The metric famine (Ng’aragu ya Kilo)
1973  Total Eclipse of the sun.

MURANGA

YEAR EVENT/AGE GROUP

1900  Njaa ya Ulaya Arrival of lt. Hal
1901  Arrival of Bw. Kirianjahi (Mr. Boyce_
1905  Arrival of large Asian trading safari and disturbance at Othaya
1908  Njaa ya Kusia
1909  1 Rupee hut tax
1912  2 Rupee hut tax
1913  Aberdare Forest created D.C. was Me. Eshbon
1914  Outbreak of German War. Requistiion of stock
1916  Chief Karuri Died
1917  Employment of forest guards
1918  End of German War. D.C. was Commander Robert named ‘Kimotho’ Issue of identity cards
1922  Harry Thuku arrested Rinderpest
1922  Introduction of ‘Shilling’
1924  Fort Hall Agriculture
1925  Thika – Nanyuki railway started Local Native Council
1926  Eclipse
1927  first aeroplane seen Opening of L.N.C. Hall
1928  Earth tremor
1929  Locusts ‘Muthirigu’ dance
1930  Morobo’ dance Return of Kenyatta – Plaque
1931  Sale of wattle bark introduced
1932  Soil conservation campaign under A.O. Mr. Chambers
1933  First plantation of cotton. Carter Commission
1934  Famine ‘Karugia Mithuru’
1935  Introduction of 5 cent piece ‘Ndururu’
1936  Cleaning of Villages by Mr. Dowson Rat proofing of grain stores
1938  Large tax collection in Nairobi
1939  D.C. Mr. Olive (one armed) 2nd World War
1940  Kerugoya factory started
1941  Karatina factory started
1942  Raising hut tax to Shs. 14/= and exemption of women
1943  Famine ‘Ng’aragu ya Mianga’
1944  departure of Mr. Olive, D.C.
1945  End of Second World War D.C. Mr O’Hagan ‘Wamaihu’
1946  Return of the demobilized soldiers
1947  D.C Mr. Coutts’ithe wa Kamau’ Refused to dig terraces
1948  Women’s revolt
1949  D.C. Mr. G.A. Loyd ‘Wamugi’
1951  Objection to rinderpest inoculation
1952  Emergency declared
1953  Formulation of home Guard and building of posts in sub-location Death of Matengwo
1955  Start of land consolidation Amnesty surrender offer.
1956  Return of detainees. Registration of ‘Loyalist voters
1957  First general election \

87
1958  K.k.m. First clubs start of extramural tax default labour scheme  
1959  Closure of Kangema and Kandara Works lamps  
1960  Formation of K.A.N.U  
1961  General Election Release of Kenyatta  
1962  Lancaster House Conference for Kenya’s Independence  
1963  Internal Self Government first African D.C.  
1964  Kenya becomes Republic  
1965  Famine – Yellow maize imported from America  
1966  Limuru Conference Formation of K.P.U Thika ceased to be a district  
1967  This became a Municipal Council B. Kaggia Imprisoned at Kisii.

NYERI

YEAR EVENT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>YEAR</th>
<th>EVENT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1900</td>
<td>Ndimo or Kaimbwo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1901</td>
<td>Njangiri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1902</td>
<td>Kamande or Ndungu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1903</td>
<td>Catego or Ngara</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1904</td>
<td>Muchai or Wakaba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1905</td>
<td>Nyutu or Mirigi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1906</td>
<td>Ngaara or Mitaruri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1907</td>
<td>Njege</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1908</td>
<td>Githii or Kamunya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1909</td>
<td>Makanga or King’otore</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1910</td>
<td>Kanuria or Kirengeri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1911</td>
<td>Njaramba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1912</td>
<td>Uhere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1913</td>
<td>Mbauni or Njanjo or Rumemo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1914</td>
<td>Gaturhe or Mungai or Mbia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1915</td>
<td>Birimbi or Mikanga</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1916</td>
<td>Gacogwa or Njanjo or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1917</td>
<td>Kia –Riuua or Kianduma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1918</td>
<td>Ndarama or Ng’aragu ya Thika</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1919</td>
<td>Kibandi or Rutara or Njunge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1920</td>
<td>Noti or Kibandi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1921</td>
<td>Muthetha (Gathetha)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1922</td>
<td>Kiahiti or Ciringi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1923</td>
<td>Bendera or Muthetha wa Murichu or Kinungi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1924</td>
<td>Gachithi or Muthaithi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1925</td>
<td>Reir or Karebe or Kiareri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1926</td>
<td>Kiandege or Kianduma or Kamanu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1927</td>
<td>Kiangigi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1928</td>
<td>Githinginthia or Kiendano</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1929</td>
<td>Muthirigu or Mugongo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1930</td>
<td>Mamboleo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1931</td>
<td>Magoko or Kiandege</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1932</td>
<td>Kiangigi (11) or Gathua</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1934</td>
<td>Muchegi or Muthigika</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1935</td>
<td>Ndururu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1936</td>
<td>Cindano</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1938</td>
<td>Mabati or Kimunya bangi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1944</td>
<td>Kiambita or Jabani</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1946</td>
<td>Kimunya Bangi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>YEAR</td>
<td>EVENT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1901</td>
<td>Famine of Kodi ya Kwanza</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1904</td>
<td>Famine of Rupia mbili-mbili</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1907</td>
<td>Famine of rupia tuta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1909</td>
<td>Famine of Mwahera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1914</td>
<td>Famine of Mzungu (The Giriama Rebellion)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1917</td>
<td>Kilifi Station established</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1918</td>
<td>Famine of Rupai pia ni mwenga</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1928</td>
<td>District Headquarters at Kilifi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1930</td>
<td>Flood and Malindi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1937</td>
<td>Establishment of Kilifi Primary School</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1940</td>
<td>Italian bomb at Malindi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1944</td>
<td>Famine of Ngano (Nzala ya Ngano)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1948</td>
<td>Establishment of Kilifi District Hospital</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1949</td>
<td>Total Eclipse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1949</td>
<td>Sood Bin Ali’s death</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1959</td>
<td>Official Opening of Kilifi District Hospital 1959</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1963</td>
<td>District Commissioner – Kelly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1960</td>
<td>Vasco Da Gama Memorial unveiled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1961</td>
<td>record rain in two days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1961</td>
<td>Sabaki Bridge destroyed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1963</td>
<td>General Elections (May)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1963</td>
<td>Internal Self–Government Independence (12/12/63)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1964</td>
<td>Republic (12/12/64)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1965</td>
<td>Famine of Ngano (Nzala ya Ngano)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1966</td>
<td>Tsuma washe-Kajiwe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1966</td>
<td>Hon. Katana Ngala goes to parliament</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1967</td>
<td>Performing his witchcraft activities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1967</td>
<td>End of Shifta war</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1967</td>
<td>Operation of Kajiwe Alias with Tsuma washe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1969</td>
<td>Start of Metric System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1970</td>
<td>Land Adjudication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1972</td>
<td>Death of R.G. Ngala</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1973</td>
<td>Eclipse of the sun Arrest and detention of Kajiwe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1974</td>
<td>Operation of Kenya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1974</td>
<td>Minign- Kinangoni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1974</td>
<td>End of G.P.T. payment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1974</td>
<td>Tarmacking of Mazeras Kaloleni road</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1974</td>
<td>Kilifi North Constituency created</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1975 Taking over of Mariakani Milk Scheme by Kwale Kilifi Co-operative Union from Ministry of Agriculture
1975-76 Famine Relief referred to ‘Harambee’
1975-77 Kasus Death/Rabies/Start of Rain season
1980-1981 Famine changilo
1984 Bamba Nyayo water Project (Pipeline)
1988 Hon. Mathias Keah 1st entry into parliament (Mlolongo)
1989-1991 Construction of Kilifi Bridge
1992 Multi-pary elections
1997 Creation of Malindi district
1997 Nino rains
1997-1998 Kaya Bombo Violence
1998 Death of Habel Dzombo

Establishment of Districts offices (Vitengeni, Kikambala, Chonyi, Bimba)

KWALE

YEAR EVENT

1910 Col. Thomas Kupanda Minazi Mengi Waa
1921 Identity Card
1924 Kilungua Local Native Council, Kwale
1927 Ndege ya Kwanza
1939 – 1945 Vita Vikuu
1944 Watu washikwa kupelekwa kazi taveta
1952 Mkutano wa kwanza Mzee Jomo Kenyatta Kundutsi shimba North
1961 Mvua ya mafuriko

LAMU

YEAR EVENT

1916-1917 Mohanja wa Bwana Reds (Mr. Ready’s vaccination against small pox
1914 Mashimbo ya kwanda umezawa (Martial law in recruiting people for war started)
1916-1917 Mwaka wa kappa (famine which farmers started without grain)
1918 Mtangilongi ulikuwa (The greatest influenza started and killed many people
1919 Mwisho wa vita (The end of the first World War)
1924-1925 Wakati Mudir ni Mwenye Abbas umezawa (Mudir Mwenya abbas started working at Faza)
1925 Kupatwa yuva (Eclipse of the sun) However, this comes often. It is hard to pin down a special period or year. It may occur twice a year)
1934 Wakati Mudir ni Salim Basafer Umezwa (Mudir Salim took office at Faza)
1939 Vita za taliani (The Italian war – Shakani and Kiunga Village attacked by Italian)
1942 October Wakati Mudir wa Kiunga alo ogura Kiunga (Mudir ran away October from Kiunga)
1952 Mudir Mohammed Saad umezawa (M.W.Saad took office at Faza)
1956 Wakati Mudir Khatib umezawa (When Mudir Abdulla took office at Faza)
1960 Mvua kubwa gharika tarehe 9.9.61
1963 Wakati Kenya ilipata Uhuru
1964 Matata ya Shifta (watu wengi kuhama kwenda Malindi kwa sababu ya shifta)
1969 Kifo cha Hon. T.J. Mboya
1971 Wakati Hon Mzee Jomo Kenyatta alopotembelea Lamu (Mpeketoni)
1972 Kifo cha R. Ngala
1974 Uchaguzi wa pili wa Bunge aina ya Cheka no Mudhihiri
MALINDI

YEAR EVENT
1901      Famine of Kodi ya Kwanza
1904      Famine of Rupia
1907      Famine of rupa tatu
1909      Famine of Mwahera
1914      Famine of Mzungu- (the Giriama rebellion)
1918      famine of rupiapia ni mwenga
1928      district Headquarters at Kilifi
1930      Flood in Malindi
1939      Italian bomb at Malindi
1942      famine of Ngano (Nzala ya Ngano)
1943      Chanjo
1946      Mwaka wa Tsawe Konde
1948      Kubwiriwa kwa Dzuwa
1949      sood Bin Alis death
1958      Kabwere ana Zikiha
1961      Dhalaja ya sabaki
1963      Kenya Kupata Uhuru
1967      Mwisha wa vita zha mashifuta
1972      Kufa kwa Ngala
1973      Kubwiriwa pwa dzuwa (Eclipse of the sun)
1973      Arrest/detention of Kajiwe
1974      Mwisha wa kodí (end of GPT Payment)
1974      Tarmacking of Mazeras – Kaloleni Road
1975-1976 Nzala ya Harambe (famine relief referred to ‘Harambee’)
1980      Nzala ya changilo (famine changilo)
1985      Kufa pwa Kabwere
1997      Kuanza pwa wilaya ya Malindi (Creation of Malindi District: Honyi, Bimba)

MOMBASA

YEAR EVENT
1901      Fort Jesus turned into prison
1902      Native Hospital Makadara Mombasa (Sipitali ya Nitifu)
1911      (PLAGI) and Tee za Makakhi) disease
1912      First ship wreck (Indian) S.S. Mongal off cliffs at Stat House, Mombasa
1915      Heavy rain submerged ¼ of Mombasa
1914-1918 First World War
1918      Germany war prisoners captured in Tanzania and built ‘SALIM ROAD’ from LIKONI FERRY TO NYALI BRIDGE
1920      Port of Mombasa ceased to accept big ships
1924      The first German Tourist ship called at Port of Mombasa
1925      Khoja Jamat Khan was completed (Kuze road)
1927      Railway bridge Kilindini was built
1928      Duke of Wales paid a visit to Mombasa
1929      Mackinon Market in Old town was built
1930      Mfalme wa Ngona’ was installed
1931      Nyali Bridge was built
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Event</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1932</td>
<td>European Hotel converted into Customs House</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1933</td>
<td>Present DC’s office ceased to operate as Railway Office Nyali Bridge became operational</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1934</td>
<td>Origin of Kenya Bus Service in Mombasa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1936</td>
<td>Queen Kinana was installed Vita vya Washihiri na Wakavirondo Second world War.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1939</td>
<td>Bombardment of Malindi by air. Old Makupa Police under the officer who was designated ‘Mungu wa Makupa’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1942</td>
<td>Lady Grigg Maternity Hospital was built</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1943</td>
<td>Prison lines at Uhuru Garden Kilindini road</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1945</td>
<td>Liaons ate some people in Mombasa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1947</td>
<td>Tononoka Centre opened</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1950</td>
<td>The Tusker Building (E.A. Breweries was opened)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### TAITA

#### VOI DIVISION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Event</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1901</td>
<td>St. Mark Church Kujengwa Sagalla</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1902</td>
<td>Boma ya D.C. Mwatate (Mr. Redia)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1928</td>
<td>Maafisa wa Nzige Kuanza kazi sagalla</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1930</td>
<td>Mvua kuu (Makusanya)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1943</td>
<td>Njala ya Ngano Hali ya Hatari</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### TAVETA DIVISION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Event</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1914</td>
<td>Vitavya kwanza vya dunia kufika hapa taveta Augst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1915</td>
<td>Ndege ya kwanza kufika hapa taveta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1916</td>
<td>Gari la moshi kifika hapa Taveta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1916</td>
<td>Mngreza kufukuza mjerumani hap Taveta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1917</td>
<td>Tetemeko la ardh la kubwa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1919</td>
<td>Mmea wa pamba kuanza kufika hapa Taveta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1920</td>
<td>Shamba la mkonge kuanza kulimwa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1924</td>
<td>Nzige nyangi zili kufika Taveta na kula kila mimea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1936</td>
<td>Wa abashi (Ethiopians) walifika Taveta na kufanya kazi Mzima Spring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1939-1945</td>
<td>Vita vya pili vya dunia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1942</td>
<td>Mvua kubwa ilinyasha, mafuriko yakavunja mfereji wa mahoo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1961</td>
<td>Mvua kubwa ilinyeshi na kufunika mfereji wa kimorigo (Block ‘C’)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### TAITA

#### WUNDANYI DIVISION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Event</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1900</td>
<td>Njaa ya Mwakisenga</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1943-1944</td>
<td>Njaa ya nyangira</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1960-1976</td>
<td>Njaa kila mahali</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1988</td>
<td>Missionaries Sagalla Rev. Wray (CMS)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1989</td>
<td>1st MISSIONARIES CATHOLIC Bura Mission</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1904</td>
<td>Missionaries – Mbale Maynard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1905</td>
<td>Missionaries Wusi V-V verb</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1900 Kidai Sisal Estate
1928-1929 Mwatate Sisal Estate
1935 1st District Agricultural Officer Mr. Gun Glift
1912 Chief wa kwanza kuchaguliwa Mbololo Mr. Mwaviswa
1914-1917 Wakasigwa kuhamishwa Malindi
1918 1st world War British/Germany
1924 Mvua kubwa 1st Makanyanga
1929 wakasigwa wabaki Mwatate
1929-1930 wesu District Hospital Yajenwa Mvua ya
1930 Makanyanga Taita
1934 Mvua kubwa – 2nd Makanyanga
1935 Mvua kubwa – 3rd Makanyanga
1936 Mvua kubwa – 4th Makanyanga
1936 Wakasigwa kurudishwa Mwatate
1938 Wataita waambiwa kwenda Taveta Kimorigho Irrigation Scheme – Taveta
1939-1945 2nd world War –
1947 Wataita waambiwa kwenda Shimba Hills – watu 4 walikwenda
1962 Mvua kubwa ya mafuriko nanjaa
1930-1934 Maynard School uanzishwa
1930-1934 Bura Mission kupata ntermediate
1939-1945 2nd World war
1944 Coastal people being conscripted and sent to Taveta Irrigation Scheme
1969-1976 Moyo wa Harambee wa kuchangia Taita Nzima maendeleo yaonekana
1976 Road Accident Mwatate
1900 Chruch Missionary Society wa established in dabida (taita)
1952 Mzee Jomo Kenyatta and others then K.A.U members being arrested and K.A.U. being
barned in Kenya
1963 The 1st African District Commissioner to be stationed in Taita/Taveta District – Mr
Geoffrey Kariithi
1967 His excellency the president Mzee Jomo Kenyatta visited and held a Mwatate in
Taita/Taveta District
1970-1971 His Excellency the President Mzee Jomo Kenyatta visited the 2nd time at Mwatate High
School Mwatate. Voi – Mwatate and Mwatate Wundanyi roads constructed tarmarcked
and completed
1975 Installation of East African Power & Lighting Voi-Mwatate Wundanyi
1969 Mwatate Water Project completed
1970 Mgeno Ranch established Chawia Chief’s Office was completed and officially opened by
A.N.N. Ndoro the then district Commissioner
1975-1976 Draught reached its climax and wild and domestic animals died and Mwatate Dam dried
up
1929 The first roman Cathodlic Priest house was built at Mwanda
1930 Masai Morans killed Mrombo na dstole cattle
1952 Road to Vuria mountain and radio Repeater Station built by E.A.R. & T
1956 Muula (witch doctor) killed seven people with hius panga and bow and arrows. He was
shot dead by Administration Police.
1963 Uhuru, Wananchi celebrated throughout the District with great pleasure
1964 Land Consolidation started
1966 Establishment of Lualanyi Ranching Company Ltd.
1971 The first Harambee Secondary School (St. John) was opened
1972 Rev. father Damian Manyatta was ordained. The first Roman Catholic Priest from
Njawuli Village
1974 25 k.m. Harambee road from Mwanda to Mwaktau was officially opened by the District
Commissioner, Mr A.N.N. Ndoro
1975 Mr. Eliud M. Mahihu
- The then Provincial commissioner, Coast Province conducted a fund raising meeting in aid of Uuria Christ Church (AC) and His excellency the President Mzee Jomo Kenyatta undertook to pay for all church pews worth Kshs.17,000.

EASTERN PROVINCE

EMBU

YEAR EVENT/AGE GROUP

1900  Invasion of embu & Mbeere Tribes by Kamba due to famine
1903  Initiation of ‘Kithambaru’ age group
1907  Euroans camped at present Embu township
1909  Famine known as ‘Ndwiga wa Ngaara’
1910  C.M.S. Kagaari wa built first missionaries arrived at Kigari C.Ms
1912  Native tribunal Court was started
1914  World war 1 started
1916  Motorcar was seen in embu for the first time
1917  Strong young men were forced to join World war 1
1917  First Embu chukka Road
1918  End of World War 1
1918  Great famine known as ‘Yura ria Kithioro’ (famine Kithioro)
1920  Kenya became a Colony
1920  First D.O. (Embu division) started putting up administration camp at Manyatta.
1921  K.C.A. (Kikuyu Central Association) was started
1922  Introduction of one – shilling coin
1923  C.C.M Kyeni was built
1924  Burial of dead bodies instead of throwing them away was started
1926  Eclipse of the sun (utuku-muthenya)
1927  Kerugoya Hospital (Kirinyaga District) was opened
1928  Locusts invasion (great famine of locusts)
1929  Dispute between the people and missionaries over circumcision of girls ‘Kirore’
1931  First locusts campaign
1933  Kikuyus from Kimbu an Nyeri came to settle in Embu “Ahoi”
1933  Irungu”age group ruled instead of “Mwangi)age group
1934  First coffee in the district was planted at Kithngururu block
1935  Wakamba from Machakos and Kitui districts asked for dwelling place in Mwea
1936  Ngiciri age group kept a record of dirning intoxicating liquor
1937  Embu Post Office (old one was opened
1936  D.E.B. school embu and Kigari teachers College were started
1939  Beginning of the 2nd World war
1940  Sagana Bridge was built
1942  L.N.C. Embu Hospital was opened
1944  Famine known as ‘Yuria in Mianga’ (Famine of cassava)
1944  C.C.M. Kevote was built Kangaru school site was surveved
1946  Old Ena bridge was built
1952  The beginning of Emergency
1953  The clash of Embu and Mbeere tribes at the boundary of Evurori and Kyeni locations
1958  Chief Njagi Muthanga died
1960  The end of emergency
1963  Kenya got her independence
1964  first Public Election of chiefs
1968  Opening of Ishiara cottage Hospital
1969  Population Census
1970 The Metric Famine (Yuri ario Kiio)
1971 Beginning of S.R.D.P IN Mbeere
1972 Land registration Evureri
1973 First O.T.C Bus to pass through Ishiara on the way to Meru
1974 Initiation of Ishiara Water supply
Initiation of Kathera/Iriait une Water supply

**ISIOLO**

**YEAR EVENT**

1903 **OLA ARA OR GANNA ARA** - The year of smoke, heavy rainfall and great fog
1904 **DUL GEDO** – The year when khalu wanted to go to war with Somalis but he gave up the idea when he entered Kenya from Ethiopia
1905 **GANNA SAHEDA** - The year of much mud. Rain fell for seven consecutive days.
1906 **GANNA LUBO HARO**. The year when Boran elders assembled together having a memorable feast
1907 **FERENCHIL AMESO** – The second time for a European to be seen in Boran land
1908 **FUNDAMUSE**- The year when Europeans gathered the Borans and made them subject to Government at Funda Muse in Wajir
1909 **GANNA TURE DUE** - The year when a very rich Boran died
1910 **GANNA SAKUYE** – The year when the Sakuye elected their tribal leader
1911 **DUL ALI BUKE** – Borans led by Ali Buke went to fight Somalis
1912 **GANNA KORE HADAN** – The year Borans fight with Samburu at Kome. Samburu were defeated
1913 **GANNA KOTE DUE** - The year when Boran warrior Kote died. He was born without figures on one hand.
1914 **GANNA KITI DUE** The year when Kiti died. He was a son of a very rich leader. Was killed by Somalis
1915 **GANNA GUYO GUTU** - The year when guyo gutu died. He was a great warrior. He was killed by an elephant
1916 **GANNA BISANI GUDO** – The year of great floods
1917 **GANNA KHAKE SAKUYE** - The year when sakuye were fined 400 heads of cattle
1919 **FUDA GABRA** – the time when the Borans and Gabbra disagree and the Gabbra decided to move to Marsabit
1920 **GANNA RAFISA**. The year of epidemix presetabley caused by pneumonia
1921 **GANNA DARA**. The year when the animals died of Rinderpest
1922 **GANNA DOI FITAN**-The year when two Somalis armed with rifles went to Barbote near Merti and were killed by Borans.
1923 **GANNA SABDI REE** – The year of goats and sheep epidemic
1924 **GANNA FINO** – The year of chicken pox
1925 **GANNA KAKE WATO** – The year when a Boran killed a Somali. The Borans were fined 100 heads of cattle
1926 **GANNA REE DIBA GUR** – The year when a district Commissioner of Isiolo ordered 100 ewes to be taken to him
1927 **GANNA OLA KOI AJI or GANNA LAFA CHOCHOTE**: The year of the “earth tremor” great droughts occurred, many animals died
1928 **OLA DIKO OR OLA KOLANJE** – A severe drought occurred.
1929 **GANNA UNTA**- The year of prolonged rain,
1930 **GANNA KODI** – The year of poll Tax. Ganna dadacha Cirani did Ndege. The year trees were cut down. Garba – Tulla to make room for the construction of an airstrip.
1931 **NADI GALA** – Somalis killed Borans, theBorans appealed to D.C. Mr. Dalocks who confiscated Somali camels.
1932 **GANNA KAKAWISA** – The year of thunderstorms without rains
1933 GANNA KAKE OLIANA – Borans killed 6 somalis. The Borans fined 1200 heads of cattle
1934 (a) Ganna Fur fur: The year of plenty of grass
(b) Ganna Baga – The year of leprosy out break
1935 GANNA DABASA MUOGA - The year when many Borans moved to dabasa Muoga at the boundary of Marsabit and Boran District
1936 GANNA BISAN DIMO - The year of the red water. After heavy rains
1937 (a) Ola Garba deman – The year the Borans trekked from other parts to Garba tula areas due to no rains
(b) Mwaka wa Bissan Dima – The year of the “Brown waters” and heavy rainfall
1938 LUB ADI – An age group feasted to celebrate their occussional traditional events
1939 GANNA VITA TALIANI – The year of British and Italian war 2nd World war
1940 (a) Ganna Bisan Lafiri deman – The year of remarkable floods
(b) Vita Olki Italiana – The years in which the Italian was started
1941 GANNA BADOLE DEBISIN – The year people from Moyale fled their country to Isiolo district because of war
1942 GANNA SARAKA DAKANI - the year when the Borans consulted the Meru leaders. The Borans were allowed to take their animals to Tharaka
1943 GANNA ABUDUBA ALI IAJESAN – A Somali shifta killed Abduba ali near Merti. The Shifta was also killed by Borans. Salad name.
1944 OLACHAFA DEMAN – The year in which there was plenty of grass in Sericho and the Boran from Garba – Tulla moved to Sericho because Garba – Tulla was effected by the droughts. This is also the end of the World War II.
1945 GAFA AWANISA ADAN – The year when the country was invaded by locusts
1946 GANNA JILA SAKUYE – The year when Sakuye nominated their traditional leaders
1948 GANNA KAKE AJURAN – The year when the Borans killed two Adjurans at merit. The Borans paid 200 heads of cattle to compensate.
1949 GANNA SUGAH – The peaceful year
1949 CONNA DUL KORE
1951 GANNA GABA – The year when there was much rainfall. In this same year the Somalis of Wajir moved to Korte Kore because of droughts that had stricken Wajir.
1952 GANNA BOKA TOK – The year during which it rained only for one day
1953 GANNA OLA BUKE – The year in which goats and sheep trespassed Meru District from Garba – Tulla. The animals were confiscated and 10% were taken by the government. The Government took 3,000 goats.
1954 GANNA NYENA HAMAT – The year of lion man eater Lions ate many Borans.
1955 GANNA LIME. The year of needle. The first time the animals were inoculated against rinderpest
1956 GANNA WARANA GURAN – The of depriving spears to the increasing of poachers the government decided to collect all spears from Borans
1957 GANNA KHAKE KORI - The year in which Kori Wako was killed by Somalis. The Somalis compensated with 200 heads of cattle
1958 GANNA WIGI GUDO - The year of big auction
1959 GANNA BOSHE SERICHO GRSAN OR MWAKA WAS TAABU YA SERICHO - GRSAN OR MWAKA WAS TAABU SERICHO – The year 1967 in which stock died because of droughts in Sericho, and famine relief was distributed to the people by government.
1960 GANNA JOLE KORE FITE MAGADO – The year when 3 Boran children Children were killed by samburu at Magado
1961 GANNA ALABATI REE – The year when the Northern Province People’s progressive Party was founded
1962 GANNA SIASA N.P.P.P. The year when the Northern Province People’s Progressive Party was founded
1963 GANNA DIC. WABERA FI CHIEF HAJI GALMA IJESAN – The year in
Which the District Commissioner Mr. David Wambera AND Chief Haji Galma were killed by Somali shifta ten miles from Muddo – Gashe Sericho road. 28/6/63.

1964 GANNA JARSI BENDERADABAT – The year in which Elders hoisted the flag. The year of independence
1965 GANNA SHIFTA DUFT - The year of shifta. The shifta troubles started among the Borans
1966 GANNA KIJIJI SEMAN – The year of vilagization. All Borans were confined in specified Manyattas and were restricted to graze in particular zones

GANNA SHIFTA BATT - The year of the end of shift. The Arusha agreement between between Kenya and Somali under the chairmanship of dr. Kaunda the President of Zambia.

KITUI

YEAR EVENT

1901 Kuka kwa Kilovoo Introduction of Rupee coins
1908 Yua ya Kilovoo (Malakwe) – Famine of beans
1913 Kau munene – 1st World war
1917 Muimu wa andu (imili) cerebral spinal menengitis
1918 Muminukilo wa kau end of 1st World War
1922 Kuka kwa silingi introduction of shillings
1924 Yua ya Nzalukanga Great famine
1926 Kukwata hwa sua great sun eclipse
1929 Yua ya Kakuti Great famine
1930 Yua ya silanga famine during digging of dams
1935 Yua ya Mavindi famine of selling bones
1939 Kau wa Italia 2nd World War
1942 Yua ya mananga Famine of cassava
1944 Yua ya Nzie (Ngie) famine of lourcs
1945 Muminukilio wa End of 2nd world war kau wa Italia
1946 Yua ya mutumbu katune Famine of red flour relief (Ndovoi)
1950 Yua ya malpmge famine 0s selling sisal
1952 Mau Mau Mau Mau oath taking and declaration of emergency in Kenya
1952 Yua ya Ndeke. Mhua nene Transportation of famine relief by air, heavy rains caused by floods yua Nguti
1963 Kenya yakwarie uhuru – Kenya became independent (12-12-63)
1965 Yua ya mutu wa nganu Famine when people were using wheat flour
1966 Yua ya masinga – Kitui people were buying food from masinga in Machakos

MAKUENI

Year event

1900 Massion (at Muisuni KDO)
1904 Hovi Yiyyatuang’wa (first settlement in Nairobi)
1906-1909 Kveso (Dace)
1908-1910 Andu Mambee Kutua kuu Kuma Mau Chief Ntheketha (Immigration from Mua
1910 Ndata ila yaunie
1915 Matlakwe (Gamine)
1916 Munyao was Ngondi
1911 Timamu (Report)
1912
1914-1918 Sukulu ya Lasima
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Event</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1918-1919</td>
<td>Muimu wa Mavui (epidemic in domestic animals)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1926</td>
<td>Yila Kwatukie (sun eclipse)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1927</td>
<td>Mwaka wa ngie (Locust invaded Machakos)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1929</td>
<td>Nzalukangye, Kakuti, Nzalikye (famine)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1931</td>
<td>Ngie Syaya Liu (Locust which destroyed crops)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1934</td>
<td>Yua ya Ukuku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1938</td>
<td>Kuawa kwa Itheka na makonge (Fencing with sisal)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1939-1940</td>
<td>Muindi Mbingu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1944</td>
<td>Kau wa Nzilimani Italia (Second world War)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1942</td>
<td>Munyoloka/Munyoloka Upesi (famine)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1943</td>
<td>Mbulunga (Gamine)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1945</td>
<td>Mwooxyo (amine)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1946</td>
<td>Kuandikithwa kwa Itheka sya kuta (Land Registration for sale)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1949-1951</td>
<td>Silanga Iyambiwa kwinzwa (Building of Damas) Luinda ya king'esi (whiteman who collected cattle)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1952</td>
<td>Mbuua ya Kanzi/Mamboleo (floods)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1953</td>
<td>Mau Mau (state emergency)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1962</td>
<td>Yua ya Ndeke (Floods)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1968</td>
<td>Yuuaa atta (Famine)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1969</td>
<td>Kutahwa kwa Andu itina wa Usumbi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1972-1973</td>
<td>Yua ya Longosa (the famine which caused movement of cattle)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1974</td>
<td>Yua ya Longosa (drought which affected livestock)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1978</td>
<td>Kukwa kwa President Kenyatta na Kusumbika kwa President Moi (Death of President Kenyatta and Inauguration of President Moi)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1980</td>
<td>Yua ya Nukwangwete (Famine whose money was available but no food)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1984</td>
<td>Yua ya Katokele (The famine of yellow maize) or Yua ya Ndukambilikwatye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1985</td>
<td>Iivinda ya kiinyu (Army worms invasion)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1986</td>
<td>Ndata Yooncka (a strange star was seen in the sky)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1989</td>
<td>Utalo wa andu ulu wila kwiiwa (Latest Census)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1991</td>
<td>Kwambiiwa kwa syama mbingi (Introduction of Multi-partism)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1992</td>
<td>Kwambiliwa kwa district Nzau (District Inception)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1997-1998</td>
<td>Mbuua ya el nion (El Nino Rians)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**WAJIR**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Event</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1900</td>
<td>kamis biya Badan. The year when there was plenty of water.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1901</td>
<td>JIMAA GUYARO. The year there was very little rain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1902</td>
<td>AHAD UNNI. Smoke (there was so much smoke in the air that the sun was blurred)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1904</td>
<td>IN DUL GEDO. A year when there was war threats BETWEEN Kenya and Ethiopia which did not materialise Dul Gedo was the Somali leader.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1906</td>
<td>TALADA KOTO GALGALE. The year when Koto Galgalo a Boran leader died.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1906</td>
<td>ARBAA MUTHAHA. Year when camels were attacked by a killer disease made their heads to swell.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1907</td>
<td>KHAMIS ARAN. A year when there was plenty of water grass and food. People prepared several tree shades where Koran was read.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1908</td>
<td>JIMAA MODOBEYA. The year of rinder pest epidemic.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1909</td>
<td>SEBDAI MERI. The year of Somali Inter-tibal war Ajuran, Gare and Borana</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1910</td>
<td>AHAD OBRAHIM DER. The year when ilbrahim Der (ajuran leader was killed by Degodia.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1911</td>
<td>TALADA HABASHE LADAMEY. Year when Ethiopia shiftas were killed by the British D.C. MOYALE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1912</td>
<td>WARIIK. The year of War between Mohamed Zuber and Italians</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1913 KHAMIS HAGALU FULE. The year when all camels land cows were pregnant and hence there was no milk. Soup was the drink of the year.

1914 JIMAA OLIK ALIM. The year when Olim (Degodia led a civil war against Gare)

1915 SEBDI MAHAT HASSAN IDNTI. The year when Mahat Hassan Chief of Ajuran died.

1916 ISNINTI ILIDUGU. The year when all wells were closed Oloi Dile (ajuran Chief ) fought the British

1917 (a) GETHAGURIK. An acute drought. (b) SEBDI AULIHAN. When auilhans cattle were confiscated (Penalty for murdering D.C. Capt. Williams)

1919 (a) ARBAA ARAN. A year with a lot of rain. The same year Somali elders moved to Nairobi on foot to question the imposition of tax on them. (b) ISNINTI ILIDUGU way by British of forcing locals to surrender guns they had)

1920 (a) TALADA ILKI. The year Ethiopians led by Tarafa.

1921 ARBAA RAFISA. Sleeping sickness outbreak.

1922 ISNINTI ILIDUGU MODUROBI. When there was eclipse of the sun.

1923 SEBDI DEREDI. Year when many camels gave birth and they diarroed blood.

1924 (a) AHAD OLIK (Boran Chief was killed in war between Boran and Gare at Ajawa. (b) DEER AYAH. Year when there was louse invasion.

1925 ISNINTI SHEKE HUSSEIN. Sheikh Hussein a prominent Ajuran Sheikh died.

1927 ARBAA ADI MIRIE. Rain fell for two days only.

1928 OLA KHOLDAJI. When hides and skins marketing was lucrative.

1929 JIMAA ISKFUR. The year when there was enough rain all the year round.

1930 (a) KODIGA. People fled in order to avoid paying GPT. (b) KODI BAKATAN. When people opposed Poll-Tax.

1931 (a) KORONDE. The year when Boran-Ajuran fought at Korondile and may people died. (b) SEBTI DUKALE. Dukale clash. An inter-trival clash between Degodia and Borans at Dukale near Moyale.

1932 (a) SEBDI DUYAR OR Year when cholera killed many people. Poll-Tax was introduced and many people ran away to avade paying it.

1933 TALADA FANTA. The year when fanta disease (small pox) killed many people.

1934 TALADA ILDUGU. When urungu wells were sealed for the purpose of netting Poll-Tax evaders.

1935 KHAMIS JIKIU. The year of Italian invasion in Ethiopia.

1936 (a) JIMAADE ALOSHI. The year when Ajurans died of cholera. (b) (i) KHAMIS BARDETA. When People took their livestock to Badera because of profitable market. (ii) GANA NDEGE ARGAN. The year aircraft was first seen around.

1939 (a) ISNINTI WERA. End of the Italian Ethiopian.

1941 ARBA SANKUL LADILI. Year when Mandera District Commissioner as killed by some Somali shiftas (SANKOLS)

1942 KHAMIS LIKHIR. Year when local shifta were looting property and killing innocent citizens after the Italian/British war.

1945 (a) AHAD DIRIE. Year when a Ajurans (Kenyans) crossed Ethiopia to drought.

1948 ARBA ABADI. Year when bones were common sight.

1950 (a) JIMAA ARAN. The year when there was a lot of rain and war.

(a) SEBDI DIGI. The year when Degodia and Ajuran fought, degodia died as a result and Ajuran paid a compensation of 200 camels.

1951 SEBDI ARBAA. Drought forced the Somalis from Criftu division and Wajir to move to Gutar and Ethiopia.

1952 AHADI BOUNDAR. When Kenya/Ethiopia boundary was cleared.

1953 ISNINTI LIME. Rinderpest vaccination campaign for the first time.

1956 KHAMIS OHIDE. The year when there was a lot of coughing disease. Year when the Government decided to auction all the stray camels from original districts (sectional lands had been demarcated).
1959  (a) HAD OSMAN GOLICH. When Osman Golicha was appointed Chief Gurar. (b) GAF AJURAN KAKE. Compensation with 100 camels by Ajurans to garehs for killing their boy.
1962  (a) ARBAA N.P.P.. The year when N.P.P. was started. (b) probably) regional boundaries commission.
1963  KHAMIS KHORI KHADE. The year when shiftas took arms to fight against Kenya. (KENYA GOT HER INDEPENDENCE)
1972  (a) SEBDI DARESHI. The year when there were strong destructive winds. (b) GAF KODI LKISAN. End of G.P.T.
1973  GAR ADUN DOTE. Eclipse year.
1978  BAR WARI MANDERA. Influde from Mandera because of drought there. (b) SANA KI AARIT. The year of drought .

NYANZA PROVINCE
KISII
YEAR EVENT

1928  First locusts appeared in Kisii up to 1931
1932  Cattle for dowry were registered.
1933  (a) A kind of plant was introduced in Kisii by the name of OMOGUTE. (b) First radio bought in Kisii.
1934  Introduction of Coffee
1935  (a) Government introduction of education (b) A kind disease called EKIEBENENI appeared
1936  (a) Dowry of seven cattle was established and registered (b) African Courts introduced (c) Cattle vaccination against pneumonia introduced (d) Land boundary disputes started.
1939  Cattle were confiscated for the second world war.
1940  (a) Establishment of Headmen (now Asst. Chiefs) (b) Vaccination started
1943  Small-pox vaccination cattle dowry.
1948  Abolition of cattle dowry
1957  Tea was introduced in North Kisii .
1960  Grade cattle was introduced in Kisii and first given to Mr. L. Okenyi
1961  Floods in Kisii
1962  Army worms invaded the district – Amakonde
1963  Kenya’s Independence
1964  African Courts were abolished and Magistrate’s Court stated
1965  (a) Land Adjudication started in Kisii (b) The spirit of harambee started to build schools, Roads, bridges etc. BICOMBE
1969  Population Census
1973  Chikororo -Kisii. Moran system was established to mainly defend Kisii- Masai border.
1974  Eclipse of the sun.

KISUMU YEAR EVENT

Year      Event
1900      Charan/Sewing machine
1901      Reru/Railways reached Kisumu Nego Oyiyo/Fighting against rat plague.
1906      A.I.C. established at Ogada Nyahera.
1907      Opaque/Famine during the introduction of identification cards.
1911      Bwana lines Mr. W.A. Lines arrive in Nyakach.
1914      Ojiro Nyamande (a) German war (b) Bubonic plague around the shores of Lake Victoria.
1918      Mbeka/Dysentry
1920      (a) Rupia. Introduction of Rupees (b) Intensified clothing of the Luos “Kanzu” (c) Salary to Chiefs.
1924      Mzungu Nyeusi/The visits of Aggrey of Achimota
1927  Luanda Magere (a) A Luo warrior believed to have been made of stone (b) Earth
tremor (c) Superiority of Europeans stressed by administrations.
1928  Ke Mbeke Ke Nyangueso.  Probable date of Mbeka and famines.
1931  Bonyo (Dede) Locust invasion
1935  Total eclipse of the sun
1939  Beginning of World War II.
1939-40  Ke Amii Meru Famine
1940  Fear of Italian invasion
1943  Ke Otonglo Famine (ten cents)
1945  End of World War II
1961  Floods
1965  Earthquake
1968  Earthquake

KURIA

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Event</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1901</td>
<td>Europeans camped at Randoka hills</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1902-1903</td>
<td>Europeans started to construct roads</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1905</td>
<td>Famine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1906</td>
<td>First District Commissioner posted to South Nyanza</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1908</td>
<td>Introduction of First ID/Cards</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1910</td>
<td>Circumcision Group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1914</td>
<td>First World War</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1918-1922</td>
<td>Plague outbreak: many people died</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1922</td>
<td>Introduction of paper money</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1922</td>
<td>Circumcision Group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1927</td>
<td>Circumcision Group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1930</td>
<td>Arrival of locusts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1931</td>
<td>Famine of the locusts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1935</td>
<td>1st Circumcision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1936</td>
<td>2nd Circumcision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1938</td>
<td>3rd Circumcision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1938</td>
<td>Abachum Ceremony</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1940</td>
<td>Famine of Small locust</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1940</td>
<td>2nd Circumcision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1942</td>
<td>3rd Circumcision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1943</td>
<td>Circumcision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1944</td>
<td>“</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1945</td>
<td>“</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1947</td>
<td>“</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1948</td>
<td>Eclipse of the sun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1948</td>
<td>First school was introduced in Kuria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1949</td>
<td>3rd Circumcision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1950</td>
<td>Circumcision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1952</td>
<td>“</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1953</td>
<td>Avakihanga 1st circumcision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1956</td>
<td>“ 2nd circumcision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1958</td>
<td>Visavin 1st circumcision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1959</td>
<td>Abamericho 1st circumcision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1960</td>
<td>Visavin 1st circumcision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1962</td>
<td>Visavin 3rd circumcision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1964</td>
<td>Kihocha 1st circumcision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1965</td>
<td>Abamericho 1st circumcision</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1966  Kihocha 2\textsuperscript{nd} circumcision
1968  Abakirina Circumcision
1970  Chesambiso 2\textsuperscript{nd} Circumcision
1972  Chesambiso 3\textsuperscript{rd} Circumcision

\textbf{SIAYA AND BONDO}

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Event</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1927</td>
<td>Ndinya/Cattle disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1928</td>
<td>Mamboleo Sensitisation on political lines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1930-31</td>
<td>Bonyo, Nyangweso, Osodo/Locusts and their offsprings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1932</td>
<td>Otuoma/Famine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1935</td>
<td>Onjoro first European came to Ukwala</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1937-38</td>
<td>Miruka/Appointment of chiefs/sub-chiefs in Miruka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1940</td>
<td>Nyangidi/A big smoke ever seen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1945</td>
<td>Ladhri/Famine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1953</td>
<td>Arong’a Famine as a result of drought</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\textbf{SOUTH NYANZA}

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Event</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1901</td>
<td>Reru /Railway reached Kisumu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1902</td>
<td>Sime/Telephone reached Kisumu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1903</td>
<td>Biro Wasungu Karungu/Arrival of Europeans at Karungu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1905</td>
<td>Ke Opande Famine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1906</td>
<td>Okombo Name given to District Commissioner Campel in South Nyanza</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1908</td>
<td>Opete Identity Card issued</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1914</td>
<td>Vita First World War</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1917</td>
<td>Ke Kanga Famine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1918-20</td>
<td>Magadi Railway building construction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1920-22</td>
<td>Ke-Kongere Famine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1923</td>
<td>Not/Introduction of paper money</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1922</td>
<td>Ndege First Aeroplane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1926</td>
<td>Ariri/Silk (Women dress)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1927</td>
<td>Aseno/Locust</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1930</td>
<td>Bonyo/Dede First arrival of locust</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1931</td>
<td>Nyangweso/Famine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1934</td>
<td>Ke-Otuoma/Famine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1935</td>
<td>Owala/Traditional dance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1939-45</td>
<td>Payakoo/Pioneer Corps – 2\textsuperscript{nd} World War</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1943</td>
<td>Ke-Ladhini/Famine</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\textbf{SUBA}

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Event</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1901</td>
<td>Europeans camped at Randoka hills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1902</td>
<td>Europeans started to construct roads</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1905</td>
<td>Famine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1906</td>
<td>First District Commissioner posted to Nyanza</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1908</td>
<td>Introduction of first ID/Cards</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1910</td>
<td>Circumcision Group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1914-18</td>
<td>First World War</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1918</td>
<td>Plaque outbreak: many</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1922</td>
<td>Circumcision group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1927</td>
<td>“</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

102
1930  Arrival of locusts
1931  Famine of the locusts
1935  1st Circumcision
1938  Abachum Ceremony
1940  Famine of small locust
1940  2nd Circumcision
1943  Circumcision
1945  1st Circumcision
1948  Eclipse of the sun
1948  First school was introduced in Kuria
1950  Circumcision
1953  Avakihanga
1956  2nd Avakihanga
1958  Visavin
1959  Abamericho
1960  Visavin
1962  Visavin
1964  Kihocha
1965  Abamericho
1966  Kihocha
1968  Chasambiso
1968  Abakiriina Circumcision
1970  Chasambiso
1972  Chasambiso

RIFT VALLEY PROVINCE
BARINGO

1908  The Voortrekkers arrived from South Africa in their famous trek with wagons
1908  Rev. C.E. Hurbert, accompanied Messrs Proposal and Ravnor and built a small log-cabin
at Kapropita (A.I.M. Station)
1909  Turkana were taken out of Baringo and administered from a new station at Ngabotok
1909  Maize introduced for the first time from South Africa.
1909  The first settler (Lotherringhan) set at Eldama Ravine
1912  The Uasin Gishu Masai were moved from their Reserve
1913  First European Police Officer was stationed at Eldama Ravine
1914  Messrs A.M. Anderson, and Slo (A.I.M.) built pit sawn timber house. Kapropita on
station begun in 1908
1914  Kabarnet was made Headquarters. Baringo District before the headquarters was at
Makutano, for Baringo District and Eldama Ravine District at Eldama Ravine. The new headquarters
was built at a grant
1914  F100 under supervision of Mr. E.B.Hosting.
1914  Baringo and Ravine Districts were amalgamated.
1914  Nandi in the district were removed to their reserve
1914  Turkana Military Expedition to joint to First World War, was dispatched.
1915  Hut Tax was collected in the Bomas Kabarnet
1915  The Government Dip was completed at Eldama Ravine and animals dipped. Irrigation
by Njemps continued.
1915  Education in the district was provided by Rev. Barnett at Kilombe 7 miles from Eldama
Ravine
1917  Nginyang K.A.R. Post built against Turkana invaders
1918  Drought and Famine
1922  Eldama Ravine made Provincial headquarters for five (5) years
1923  Change for money from Rupees to Shillings
1924  Baringo District boundaries gazetted
1925  Introduction of Local Councils
1926  Pokot allowed to graze at Churo
1926  Mr. and Mrs Dalziel of A.I.M. opened A.I.M. Mission at Kabaratonjo
1927  Famine Relief Cam. Psign (Posho)
1927  Road to Kabartonjo and Marigat completed
1928  Drought and famine

1930  The first European Medical Officer of Health
1931  Road to Karpendo completed
1932  Locusts infested district
1933  Tugen hut Tax reduced to Sh. 6/= per head
1934  Governor Joseph Bryne visited the district
1935  Removal of Uasin Gishu Masai from the district to Mara in the Masai Reserve
1936  The Headman of Morossi of East Pokot was with the Badge of Certificate
1937  Coronation Ceremonies Good harvests occurred
1939  Stock and a 10% cut
1940  Eldama Ravine Boma Re-opened
1941  A two bed maternity built at Kabarnet Hospital out of L.N.C. funds
1942  (1) Perkerra River changed its course (2) Three dams made at Kilombe, Kitomei and Endorois
1943  (1) Italian prisoners of war began to build G.A.A at Kabarnet. They built the School until 1946. (2) Chief Kibet of East Endorois location died
1943-47  Locust officer posted to the district
1944  A new L.N.C. appointed
1944  Fishery Experiments at Lake Baringo by Njemps practiced
1944  G.A.S. Kabarnet opened
1944  Mr. Dalziel (A.I.M.) left Kabartonjo due to servere illness
1944  Chief Store Lenjaub of Njemps resigned after 37 years of service and died a year later
1944  A wireless transmitting station was built at Kabarnet.
1944  Dr. Leakey, the curator of the Corylon Museum collected a 100 specimens of birds from the district for the museum.
1944  Catholic Mill Hill Mission started at Kituro – L.N.C. assisted by building the school, financially.
1944  Stock Census taken in South Tugen
1945  Brick, Tiles and Pottery industry started at Kabarnet
1945  Locusts infest the district
1945  First African Hospital Assistant posted to Kabarnet
1945  Kabartonjo A.I.M. re-opened by Mr. and Mrs. Philips.
1946  A.I.M at Kapropita and Sacho taught spinning and girls at A.I.M.
1946  Kerio River rose over Chebloch Bridge

KAJIADO

1900  First arrival of Europeans in Masai land
1904  Olanana and Europeans land agreement between Olanana on behalf of Masai and Europeans
1911  Further Olanana and Europeans agreement on Masailand
1914  The war of Longido – the first world war.
1926  Great famine in Masai land
1929  Vaccination of Small Pox

104
1934  Great famine
1939  World War II. Major Road Construction (Kajiado-Namanga)
1940  Emuo Oketeng (preparation of circumcision of Ikalekal)
1943  Great Famine
1945  The World War ending
1948  Eclipse of the sun
1951  Plenty of rain flooding
1961  Great famine
1962  Population Census
1963  Kenya’ Independence
1965  Sectional War between Matapalo and Delalekutuk

KERICHO

Year   Event
1906  Kosigio age group – circumcision
1910  Nyongi age group – circumcision
1914  1st World War referred to by Kipsigis as ‘LUGETAB JERUMAN’
1918  Maina age group (Msyema)
1921  2nd Maina age group
1924  3rd Maina age group
1926  Eclipse of the sun
1930  Younger Maina age group (Silobai) Circumcision
1931  Locust invasion
1933  1st Juma age group circumcision
1939  2nd World War – referred to by Kipsigis as “lu LUGETAB TALIAN ALIAN”
1948  Eclipse of the sun
1952  Emergency
1961  Tuberet (flood)
1963  Kenya attained independence.

LAIKIPIA

Year   Event/Age Group
1900  Ngaragu Famine – no circumcision was done
1901  Gatego – Veneral disease
1902  Kamande Gatiti Tray
1903  Kibango
1904  Njege – Porcupine
1905  Kanyutu - Tiger
1906  Nyarigi
1907  Kangioi
1908  Matiba – Maize gruel kabau
1909  Thingiingi – Barbed wired
1910  Mako
1911  Ugimbi – Millet
1912  Mwambo – Girl play
1913  Kiihu Mwiri
1914  Rememe
1915  Ngakia
1916  Ngombera
1917  Njanjo – Vaccination
1918  Withuguo Ndarama Band
1919  Kimiri – Kind of disease
1920  Igatia Kibandi – Identity Card
1921  Munada – Cattle dip
1922  Munoti – Money notes
1923  Ciringi – Introduction of shilling
1924  Githigu – Large maize
1925  Munai – Ear beads
1926  Kianduma – Darkness
1928  Githingithia – Earthquake
1929  Nderece
1930  Mambo Leo
1931  Marobo – Kind of game played by girls
1932  Njano Kanini
1933  Nduru – Gentleman
1934  Nduru – Five cents
1935  Tauru – Towel
1936  Kenya Bathi – Kenya Bus
1937  Kababa kana Njabari – Japanese goods
1938  Thukia Itaha
1939  Korenji – College
1940  Mucuthu ya Mbia – Tails of rats
1941  Muthuu
1942  Njau yaki – Kind of dance
1943  Ng‘aragu ya Mianga – Cassava
1944  Muomboko – Dance
1945  Gicina Bangi – Burning of weeds
1946  Njata - Star
1947  Ngoma Kibiriti – Dance
1948  Karaka kana kibagio
1949  Kanyoi – Razor Blade
1950  Muhehenjeko – epidemic
1951  Thuthu
1952  Warunrungana
1953  Komerera – Hiding
1954  Gotora
1955  Therenda – Surrender
1956  Cheni – Demarcation
1957  Ruthario – Rosary
1958  Mubutiti – Boundary
1959  Ngeithia ndimuru
1960  K.A.N.U. – Kanu
1961  Kiguu
1962  Munyongoro – Millipede
1963  Ngunya Mbia

NAKURU

BAHATI DIVISION
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Event/Age Group</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1900</td>
<td>Ngaragu Famine – no circumcision was done</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1901</td>
<td>Gatego – Veneral disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1902</td>
<td>Kamande Gatiti – Tray</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1903</td>
<td>Kibango</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1904</td>
<td>Njege – Porcupine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1905</td>
<td>Kanyutu - Tiger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1906</td>
<td>Nyarigi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1907</td>
<td>Ka’ngei</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1908</td>
<td>Matiba – Maize gruel kabau</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1909</td>
<td>Thingiingi – Barbed wired</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1910</td>
<td>Makio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1911</td>
<td>Ng’araru ya Gathia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1912</td>
<td>Njaraba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1913</td>
<td>Kihu Mwiri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1914</td>
<td>Rumeno</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1915</td>
<td>Ngaikia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1916</td>
<td>Nguku Ngoige</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1917</td>
<td>Njane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1918</td>
<td>Ndarama - Band</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1919</td>
<td>Kabiaru</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1920</td>
<td>Kibandi – Identity Card</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1921</td>
<td>Munada – Cattle dip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1922</td>
<td>Munoti – Money notes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1923</td>
<td>Ciringi – Introduction of shilling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1924</td>
<td>Githigu – Kind of large maize</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1925</td>
<td>Mubai – Ear beads</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1926</td>
<td>Kianduma – Darkness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1927</td>
<td>Ndege – Aeroplane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1928</td>
<td>Githingithia – Earthquake</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1929</td>
<td>Nderece</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1930</td>
<td>Mambo Leo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1931</td>
<td>Marobo – Kind of game played by girls</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1932</td>
<td>Njane Kanini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1933</td>
<td>Njenderu – Gentleman</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1934</td>
<td>Nduru – Five cents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1935</td>
<td>Tauru – Towel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1936</td>
<td>Kenya Bathi – Kenya Bus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1937</td>
<td>Njabani – Japanese goods</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1938</td>
<td>Thukia Itaha</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1939</td>
<td>Korenji – College</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1940</td>
<td>Mucuthi ya Mbia – Tails of rats</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1941</td>
<td>Muthuu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1942</td>
<td>Njau yaki – Kind of dance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1943</td>
<td>Ng’aragu ya Mianga – Cassava</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1944</td>
<td>Muomboko – Dance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1945</td>
<td>Gicina Bangi – Burning of weeds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1946</td>
<td>Njata - Star</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1947</td>
<td>Ngoma Kibiriti – Dance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1948</td>
<td>Karaka kana kibagio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1949</td>
<td>Kayu – Razor Blade</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1950</td>
<td>Muhenejeko – epidemic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1951</td>
<td>Thuthu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Year</td>
<td>Event</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1952</td>
<td>Warunrungana</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1953</td>
<td>Komerera – Hiding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1954</td>
<td>Gotora</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1955</td>
<td>Therenda – Surrender</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1956</td>
<td>Ceni – Demarcation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1957</td>
<td>Ruthario – Rosary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1958</td>
<td>Mubutiti – Boundary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1959</td>
<td>Ngeithia ndimuru</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1960</td>
<td>K.A.N.U. – Kanu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1961</td>
<td>Kiguu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1962</td>
<td>Munyongoro – Millipede</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1963</td>
<td>Uhuru</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1964</td>
<td>Jamhuru</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1969</td>
<td>Kwa Maiko</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1971</td>
<td>GEMA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1975</td>
<td>J.M. Kariuki</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1978</td>
<td>Gikuu gia Kenyatta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1979</td>
<td>Population Census</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1982</td>
<td>Paawa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1984</td>
<td>Mwakenya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1988</td>
<td>Murorongo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1990</td>
<td>Saba Saba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1992</td>
<td>FORD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1996</td>
<td>Nane Nane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1999</td>
<td>Gatiba/Karura</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**LARE DIVISION**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Event</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1900</td>
<td>Ngaragu Famine – no circumcision was done</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1901</td>
<td>Gatego – Veneral disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1902</td>
<td>Kamande Gatiti – Tray</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1904</td>
<td>Njege – Porcupine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1905</td>
<td>Kanyutu - Tiger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1911</td>
<td>Ugimbi – Millet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1912</td>
<td>Njaraba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1913</td>
<td>Khiu Mwiri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1914</td>
<td>Rememe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1915</td>
<td>Ngaikia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1916</td>
<td>Ngombere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1917</td>
<td>Njane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1918</td>
<td>Githoguo Ndarama - Band</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1923</td>
<td>Ciringi – Introduction of shilling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1924</td>
<td>Githigu – Kind of large maize</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1925</td>
<td>Mubai – Ear beads</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1933</td>
<td>Njenderu – Gentleman</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1934</td>
<td>Ndururu – Five cents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1935</td>
<td>Tauru – Towel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1936</td>
<td>Kenya Bathi – Kenya Bus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1939</td>
<td>Korenji – College</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1940</td>
<td>Mucuthi ya Mbia – Tails of rats</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1941</td>
<td>Muthuu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1942</td>
<td>Njau yaki – Kind of dance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1943</td>
<td>Mianga – Cassava</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1944</td>
<td>Muomboko – Dance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Year</td>
<td>Event</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1912</td>
<td>Masai were moved from Nakuru to their reserve in Narok District.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1914-18</td>
<td>First World War. Rupee were changed in shillings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1926</td>
<td>Eclipse of the sun. Law court was opened in Rongai. Steam roller was opened</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1958</td>
<td>First school in Rongai was opened known as Gogar primary school.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1959</td>
<td>Mau Mau Emergency.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1960</td>
<td>Rongai workshop was opened</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1961</td>
<td>Heavy rain (floods)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1963</td>
<td>General elections held</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1964</td>
<td>Africans started buying white settler’s farms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1965</td>
<td>Law Court in Rongai transferred to Molo drought all over the country</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1972</td>
<td>Settlement fund trustee started settling the landless in Nakuru.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1978</td>
<td>President Kenyatta did.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1979</td>
<td>Eclipse of the sun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1984</td>
<td>Drought all over the country</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1985</td>
<td>Bamper harvest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1996</td>
<td>Change of identity cards</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1997</td>
<td>El Nino</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1998</td>
<td>Eclipse of the moon</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**RONGAI DIVISION**

**NANDI**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Description - what the generation did and what the country was like</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

109
1900  Regained their cattle from enemies. They fought Europeans at Kasigan
1900  Nandi resistance British rule

**District Commissioners Remembered by Nandi**  W. Mayes

1906  W. Mayes Kipkigi, H.B. Partington
1907  C.M. Hemsted
1910  Mandano E.B.
1900-1910 Kipnyigei fully occupied Koisagat and Mugen. They fought with Europeans for seven years.
1910-20  The Ngongi of Kibeltwol British were fighting with Germans in Tankanyika. The Maina of Kiptile “Maina Kab Kiptile” They had many cattle which had bells. The main used to decorate themselves with beads called tile’ They assisted British during the 2nd World War 1939 – 45.
1920-21  Kangani C. Tomkinson
1928-30  Chesert
1930-40  The Chumo who coloured the waters of Chemunt and Kindos rivers. They fought with enemies along till the blood of the wounded Chemurut and Kundos warriors flooded into the water to colour the water Red.

Chemekab Kipsabel – The first generation to go to school.
1940  Foster
1941  Present Sawe the education. The first generation to achieve Independence. The generation of progress.
1954-8  Kipkergeron

**ELGEYO MARAKWET**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Event/Age Group</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1899</td>
<td>Kipnyigeu Age – Great small spread killing many people</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1902</td>
<td>Kipnyigeu Age- First Europeans entered Marakwet and brought Rupia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1903</td>
<td>William Thomson passed through Mogojiwa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1904</td>
<td>Ngongi-Settler by the name of Hoves commonly known as Cheramba settled in the area.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1906</td>
<td>Nyongi-identity cards</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1909</td>
<td>Nyongi-Murder of boer (Van Wyden) by Arap Chemoma of Kapkwe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1910-11</td>
<td>Nyongi – Aram Chemomoa captured and killed in Mombasa Kapswala was built – Tax collected and taken to District Commissioner Kiberenge stationed at Eldama Ravine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1914</td>
<td>First World War locally know as Boiretab Jurman Hetai.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1919</td>
<td>Nyongi-Punishment of Kapwek people due to attack of Wazungu’s farms. Locally know as Kepkwe.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1925</td>
<td>Nyongi-Nyung’s Sabobei ceremony commonly known as Kosachei eiy Nyhongi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1926</td>
<td>Nyongi – Great eclipse of the sun Komeei asis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1927</td>
<td>Formal education started in the area.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1928</td>
<td>Maina- this age group gathered requesting for a teacher. Government African School presently known as Tambach Boys Secondary School presently known as Secoondary School built Sirgoit Tambach road built.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1929</td>
<td>Mr. Samuel Muindi because first tax clerk at Tambach Population censured by Mr. Muindi totaling to 10,000.1930 Great famine and advent locusts. Government sent posho for relief. This is known locally as Kenyitab bichotit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1939</td>
<td>2nd World War</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1942-3</td>
<td>Chumo – while ant famine – Kiplelkowo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1950</td>
<td>Chumo – Dini ya Msambwa started (Dintab Msambnein)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NAROK**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Event/Age Group</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1906</td>
<td>Famine</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1907 Cattle disaster – Liver flukes (olomotori)
1926 1937 Cattle disaster
1940 Outbreak of malaria (Tiagoenong)
1943 Tea famine – (Olemayu Leshal) Masaai Mara reserve was started. Upgrading or
literkeyiami
1944 Morijo Loita school was opened, the fifth school in the district. compulsory education,
fifteen children run away leaving only five.
1945 Likalikah (Now Nyangusi) ceremony of Emnoto
1946 D.C. Narok major Grant is killed by maasai moran or Laibon family Ole Senteu and is
hanged.
1947 To groups of Nyangusi age group fight at Loisiu- Narok, Ikalkal and Ikamaniki.
1948 Circumcision of group of Ikamaniki
1952 State of Emergency started. Many people taken to detention camps ENTARA near
Narak.
1954 The Mau Mau leader in Narok district Ole Nkapiania is killed. (Ole Kisiu)
1955 The second Mau Mau leader in Narok district Nkapiania is killed. Taro age set
956 Compulsory education to Maasai girls in the whole district. At Narok primary boarding,
Std 1-8 started.
1957 Secondary Primary School started by the Catholic Mission at Narok. St. Mary’s Primary
School.
1958 Eunoto ceremony of Ikamaniki age group
1960 Masikonde Primary School at Narok town opened, Famine
1961 Keekorok Lodge opened. Famine – Olameyu Lepipiriuki
1962 Long rains Olarilonkitutu
1963 Long rains Olarilonkitutu
1963 Iseuri (Itiyogo) circumcision
1964 Road Construction (Sikinami, Talek, Itong)
1966 Eunoto (Itiyogo)
1967 Eunoto ceremony of Itiyogo) – cultivation started.
1969 Paramount Chief Kundai Ole Sankale died.
1970 Circumcision of Rambau age group. Civil war with neighbours (Lymbwa)
1972 Serena Lodge built
1973 Eclipse of the sun
1980 Aitong cattle dip
1982 Aitong Primary school opened
1984 Circumcision of Kishili, Famine Olameyu Lenado tolit
1986 Talek Primary School was opened
1987 Olchokit Supan Secondary Scool, Lemek Secondary School
1988 Mararianda Primary School. Enkang Olorikan ceremony of trampau and Ikiropi
Circumcision of lleeson
1991 First revenue sharing from Narok County Council (19%). Mara Paradise Lodge opened.
1993 Outbreak of Malaria (Esoolosh)
1993 Koyaki-Lemek Conservation Association. Aitong
1994 Ikishil arrival of white rhino (part of Olchorro Oiraiwa)

SAMBURU

Year Event
1890 Circumcision of Imarikon age-set.
1892-98 The six (6) drought period in which the Samburu cattle weed were wipe out and the
people had to live on wildlife.
1903 Circumcision of Iterito age grade

111
1905  First Whiteman’s contact with Samburu tribesmen on Mount Marsabit (contact between Leleruk and the whitemen)
1909  Cpt. Stigard at Baragoi
1912  Circumcision of Lmiricho age grade
1917  Samburu and Turkana wqas on the Barago plains
1922  Removal of Turkana from District
1923  Circumcision of the Likileku age grade
1924  Devastation of the Samburu cattle by Pleuro-Pneumonia neomonia
1930  War between Lpiskishu and Lorokusu
1932  Army seized all Samburu cattle Lorioki plateau to punsich Likileki age group
1933  Staters levy force
1934  Opening of Maralal Station on Loikas Valley
1936  Circumcision of Limekuri age group
1937  Branding and planned destocking on Lorroki (Nampa Kubwa)
1939  War
1944  Great drought hit the District (‘arpa’)
1945  Peace
1948  Circumcision of Likimani age grade
1951  Extraordinary heavy rains (‘Gumal’) the District
1952  Controlled grazing schemes extended to low country (i.e. Baragoi and Wamba)
1959-60  Fairly wild drought
1960  Circumcision of Lkishili age grade
1961  Extraordinary heavy rais (‘Lariboonkariaki’)  
1962  Lancaster House Conference 
1963  Independence
1965  Republic and Shifta war in the District
1967  The great drought that decimated Samburu Cattle (‘Nadololit’)
1969  District leaders Conference on Land Adjudication
1970  Ngroko attack began in earnest
1972  Land Adjudication Department came to District
1973  Land Adjudication in Lorroki
1974  PEE Ndama (Total eclipse of the sun)
1976  Circumcision of Lkilororo age grade
1977  Circmcision of Lyinkeny Lkilororo 2nd age set
1978  Peeye Kenyatta (death of President Kenyatta)
1981  Turkana/Samburu fight (Peeri naisucho)
1982  Lmuget Lkilororo (Lmuget Lenkarna)
1983  Drought (Lpaek Darleiyo – Yelllow maize)
1988  Pecoshi Kura (Elections)
1990  Peemurati Lmeoli (Circumcision of Lmeoli age set)
1992  Kura Lkiyama kumo (Multiparty elections)
1995  Nkimpande ngejuk (Secondary generation identity cards)
1996  Samburu/Turkana war on Baragoi at Marti area (D.C killed)
1997  Election-Kura, El Nino

TURKANΑ

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Event</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1914</td>
<td>German War</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1916</td>
<td>Boma opened by Fazan at Lokiriam, Kalossia opened by military</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1917</td>
<td>Lokiriam closed Moruasi (Lokiriam, Kalossia opened by military)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1917</td>
<td>Labour patrol (Joint Sudarv EEA)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1919</td>
<td>Lodwar and Kakuma opened by military Captain aron Von Otter succeeded Capt. Holdland as D.C Troops Turkana</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1925  Eclipses of the sun – alipokener
1926  Civil Administration established; Labon Kokei arrested and detained LOWALEL deported; Labon Ekai Emley to Kalossia Clenday – District Commissioner
1929  Todenyang opened Reminton – Lokitaung
1930  Mackean – District Commissioner; Wyn Harris-Lakitaung
1930  Mr. P. Wyb Harris
1931  Mr. E.R. Shackleton
1931  Introduction of berets
1932  Lodwar becomes Headquarters
1933  Death of Longman (Ngikwatela) – Chief
1933  Mr. E.H. Windley, Mr. P.S. Osborne
1934  Kaptir and South Turkana District closed down
1935  Gregory Smith District Commissioner – Alando
1935  Mr. J.W. Cusack
1936  Mr. E.J.A. Leslie
1936  Ryland – District Commissioner
1937  Mr. J.A.H. Wolff
1937  Italians appeared on Ethiopian Frontier; Mckay – D.C
1938  Mr. J.A.R. Thorp
1938  Whiteman from Ethiopia arrested and taken to Nairobi. Italian War
1939  Mr. G.G. Karr
1939  All Somalis sent away from Turkana as they were collaborating with Italians.
1940  D.O. Lokitaun evacuated. Recruitment of tribal police into Italian War
1941  Lodwar bombed three times by Italians
1942  Tribal police recovered fire arms from Italians
1942  Mr. W.F.P. Kelly
1943  Famine
1944  Turnbull-District Commissioner, Government take a bull from each family for tax payment.
1945  Mr. A.F. Hollord Walker
1945  End of war, Locust in the District
1946  Mckay – District Commissioner, retired White-house – District Commissioner. The following list of D.C Lokitaung may be of assistance in the Sub-District
1946  Mr. G.J. Elleton
1947  Mr. J.R. Nimvo
1948  District Officer’s office in abeyance; Kenyan Police killed by Merille at Meyan P.
Crichton, Mr. O.S. Knowles, Kenya Policeman killed at Meyan by Menille
1949  Death of Turkana Laibon and Ngiwoyakwara chief
1950  Mr. K.B. Keithi
1950  Dini ya Msambwa
1952  Mau Mau Emergency
1953  Famine and drought
1954  Mr. J.J. Dellmege; Drought and Famine
1955  Col. P. De Robeck
1956  Mr. J.R.M. Tennet
1957  Mr. D.C. Luke
1957  Mr. K.E. Foot, Turkana/Merille clash at Meyan (military – death of Chilaa)
2.3.58  Mr. C.L. Ryland:
4.1.58  Mr. R.K. Rinnimore, Punda Milia
2.3.58  Mr. C.L. Ryland
4.1.58  Mr. C.L. Ryland
24.4.59  Mr. M.Z. Elliot
21.8.61 Mr. C.J. Crutchley
21.8.61 Mr. M.J. Thomson, Floods
1962 Disarming Operation
1963 Independence
1964 Turkana invaded Saburu (Black Cattle)
1965 Sacking of chiefs
1966 Ekarutop (Big – star); 30/- Tax
1967 Turkana stole Govt. owned stock in Uganda (ngombe ya Alama) (Sub-Chief killed by
ngoroko)
1968 G.S.U. Operation; counting of stock
1969 Turkana killed a European Policeman in Uganda (Mr. Weeding) – Millitary operation
followed.

UASIN GISHU

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Event</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1906</td>
<td>Nyongi – The mass killing of lions by the Europeans and the Nyongi age group and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Kipyegeu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1908</td>
<td>Africans – speaking South Africans arrived in Eldoret locally know as ‘Kaburiek’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1910</td>
<td>The British settlers began to settle in Eldoret, Willy Van Aardt built the post office</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1912</td>
<td>Nyongi age group participated in the construction of the railway line “Oretab</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Kiberenge”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1914</td>
<td>First World War. ‘Nyongi went to war’ – German</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1919</td>
<td>‘Kebare Kapkee’ the punishment of the Wazungus to Keiyo people extended to Uasin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Gishu, Sergoit area.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1922</td>
<td>Railway line crossed Uasin Gishu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1924</td>
<td>Governor of Kenya Sir Rovert Coydon arrived in Eldret, the first train arrived in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Eldoret.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1026</td>
<td>The eclipse of the sun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1939</td>
<td>Maina-Second World War</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1941</td>
<td>Most of people who had joined K.A.A.R. lost their lives, small pox outbreak.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1942-43</td>
<td>Great famine – “Kiplelkowo” “Chumo – the age group initiated and flax</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>immunization was done in the whole areas.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1944</td>
<td>Malakwen Arap Rono and Kipsongok Arap Chumodied in Burma during the war</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1946</td>
<td>Cattle immunization at Timboroa for “Kipteitet”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1953</td>
<td>Police Constable Tuitoek Kwambai died</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1954</td>
<td>Eldoret—Nyaru-Ravince road constructed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1957</td>
<td>John Kibogy joined the County Council</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1961</td>
<td>Extra ordinary rains experienced ‘rotab’ Sikisti one, ‘a big dam destroyed by rains –</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Chebore Kapsem’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1962</td>
<td>Demonstration against arrival of Colonial Secretary who failed to turn up.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1962</td>
<td>William Murgor went to Lancaster House, indigenous people bought farms from the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>settlers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1962-63</td>
<td>Tuwei went to the Legislative Council</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1963</td>
<td>Raising of the flag at Burnt Forest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1979</td>
<td>Registration of farms and Presidential directives followed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1979</td>
<td>Population Census</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1980</td>
<td>Relief supply of Yellow maize</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1984</td>
<td>Drought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1989</td>
<td>Population Census</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1992-93</td>
<td>Tribal clashes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1997</td>
<td>General Election</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

WEST POKOT
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Event</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1906</td>
<td>Katkatoket Mbara Mr. Hunter, former D.C. West Suk planted foreign tree Mbara Hills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1909</td>
<td>Lukoe Mzunjon Kungetuno Kolow. First European war at Kolowo in East Suk with Marakwet.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1910</td>
<td>Msunjondo tagh kuweru tiyateinto kwit tuekwel. First European to pass through Baringo to Turkwel in West Suk.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1914</td>
<td>Porio Churuma (German fight). The first war.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1926</td>
<td>Kima-Asis. The longest eclipse of the sun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1928</td>
<td>Koringring – the greatest earthquake</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1929</td>
<td>School po tagh Ketech Kochelipa – The first G. African School at Kachliba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1930</td>
<td>Telsio Kapenguria – Kapenguria town built</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1931</td>
<td>Kanyaga – The greatest sworn of locusts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1936</td>
<td>Telsio Masokoi – Nasokol opened</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1939</td>
<td>Porio churuma nyopo odeny German fights (2nd world war) Kirwokin Adungo ompo Mnagei-Dungo Chief Mnagei.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1940</td>
<td>Kirwokin Longurakoi Ompo Mnagei Serma Longurokoi was Chief of Mnagei Yatata makutano/Letyei-Makutano shops established.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1943</td>
<td>Lokumurio - the time people were saved by cassava</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1944</td>
<td>Wirata oro mariachi passi – The bridge of Marich river was build.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1944-46</td>
<td>Wirata oro Psikor-Psikor road was opened.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1950</td>
<td>Porio Kolowo-kolowo fight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1952</td>
<td>Kimi Poyon Kapenguria mzee Kenyatta at Kapenguria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1952-9</td>
<td>Kirwokin Pkemeei longit ompo Mnagei Pkemeei Longit Chief Managei</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1955</td>
<td>Konyi Sehemu-Kongelai, Kipkomo restricted for grazing in dry season.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1959</td>
<td>Kirwokin Joshua Kakuko appointed Chief Mnagei</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1960</td>
<td>Tuonoto A.D.C. African District Council established</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1963</td>
<td>Konyi Huru – Year of independence. Tuonoto Sirikwa County Council was established</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1965</td>
<td>Kirumon ... Kong’asis – unusual start in the East. Pagha America (Kura) Yellow maize from U.S.A.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1970</td>
<td>Konyi mpaka-Kacheliba area was transferred.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1972</td>
<td>Tuonoto Pokot Country Council – Pokot County Council was established</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1978</td>
<td>Kima Poyon (Kirapas Poyon) Kenyatta died.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1979</td>
<td>Konyi Kiparun – Pokot clash with soldiers at Achivishor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1980</td>
<td>Kony Konyi Kiimon, Koei – Tapan – The out break of cholera in Kopokohg region</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1984</td>
<td>Konyi Lotiriri – Operation in Kopokog (Kaprapokot)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**BUNGOMA**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Age Group</th>
<th>Year</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>KIKAMWETI</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Matafari</td>
<td>1900-1901</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Keya</td>
<td>1902-1903</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mutoke</td>
<td>1904 – 1905</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bipande</td>
<td>1906-1907</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**KANANACHI**

| Puleki    | 1908 – 1909           |
| Silima    | 1910 – 1911           |
| Machnego  | 1912 – 1913           |
| Waluchio  | 1914 – 1915           |
| Chisike   | 1916 – 1917           |

115
Murunga 1918 – 1919

**KINYIKEWI**
- Namakha 1920 – 1921
- Chikoti 1922 – 1923
- Lihe 1924 – 1925
- Panyako 1926 – 1927
- Wanarecha 1928 – 1929
- Bulala 1930 – 1931

**NYANGE**
- Musambwa 1932 – 1933
- Kimilinda 1934 – 1935
- Chikawa 1936 – 1937
- Kimbo 1936 – 1937
- Elgon
- Nyanza 1940 – 1941
- Kasikoni 1942 – 1943

**MAINI**
- Makonge 1944 – 1945
- Majimbo 1946 – 1947
- Buhuru 1948 – 1949
- Silingi 1950 – 51
- Silabule 1952 – 1953
- Bukasi 1954 – 1955

**CHUMA**
- Sudi 1956 – 1957
- Harambee 1958 – 1959
- Chebkube 1960 – 61
- Nyayo 1962 – 1963
- Sipindi 1964 – 1965
- Namirunfu 1966 – 1967
- Para 1968 – 1969
- Sie Nginiesi 1970 – 1971

**SAWA**
- Nyilili 1972 – 1973

**BUSIA**
- 1900 Mugasa famine – Southern Division
- 1902 Railway construction at Kisumu District
- 1902-05 Opio Marajala – Nubian ruler of Samia Southern Division
- 1902 Village Headman started Northern Division
- 1902-35 Chief Murunga’s reogm – Northern division
- 1903 Chief Murefu was killed by Alumasi Imo-Northern Division
- 1903 Hut tax – Northern Division
- 1904-06 Khalende Famine – Southern Division
- 1904 Traditional war which killed Enariach and Ibu – Northern Division
- 1905 Matungu camp was built by paramount chief Mumia – Northern Division
- 1905-07 Ouma famine – Southern Division
1905  Omulepu Civil war Northern Division
1906-08 Nyabola Rinderpest plague Ondong famine – Central division
1909  Railway line reached Butere – District
1911  Cotton as Cash Crop introduced – Northern Division
1912-13 Chicken Pox (Edokoi) – northern division Kadima (from Wanga) Chief Samia and Bunyala – Southern Division, War against Marachi-Northern Division
1914-18 1. Keya (K.A.R.) 1st World War 2. Chakoya famine affected the whole of Western Province
1914-18  Njaa ya Motokaa – Northern Division. First road opened by Ambuchi Board Supervisor – Northern Division
1915-40  Famine and Musa Maragwa Church leader – Northern Division
1916  Chief Odera Kango’s reign – Northern Division
1917  Enundu – small pox, Muchele (Keya) Southern Division
1918  Kenya-Uganda boundary and Rev. Father Conen arrived Northern Division
1919  Oanbam, Agrikacha and Ndege (introduction of cotton, Agriculture and 1st Aeroplane to appear here) Central Division
1919  Chief Murunga’s reign – Northern Division
1919  Obando famine – Southern Division
1919  Enundu – small pox, Muchele (Keya) Southern Division
1920  Railway line crossed to Uganda Northern Division
1921  Ekodoi small pox – Northern Division
1921  Railway line crossed to Uganda Northern Division
1921  Bleki; Plague, small pox and Mabach a ship which was disembarked in the Sio Port area – Central Division.
1921  The first Oxen plough introduced – Northern Division
1923  Busia Market was founded – Northern Division
1924  Local Native council started – District
1925  Rinderpest cattle disease and Malaba Railway station built (Nyabola)- Northern Division
1925  Moti Halji scheme from Uganda – Northern Division
1926  First cotton buyers in Kolait – Northern Division
1926  Earthquake – Northern Division
1926  Nyabola-cattle disease vaccination and Chwele in Bungoma District
1926  Railway line built, 1st train and Chief Eunyusata’s reign – Northern Division
1927  Motoka – first motor car seen
1927  Amukura Chiefs camp built
1928  Plague disease
1929  Locusts were 1st seen in the country – Northern Division
1929  Laurent Ongoma appointed Chief of Marachi – Central Division
1931  Army works destroyed crops – Northern Division
1932  Invasion of locusts
1933  Nyangweso famine – Central Division, Amukura mission was built – Northern
1934  Mango – a Priest from Musanda who was killed June 1934 Central Division
1935  Italian – Absinia War – Northern Division
1936  Malakisi Bridge was built and Eclipse of the sun – Northern Division
1937  The Locusts swarms were eradicated- Northern Division
1937  Introduction of Miruka Sub-Chief post District
1938  Change L.N.C. to A.D.C. and the 2nd World War
1939-45  Panyako – Pioneer Corps of the 2nd World War
1941  Mtaro – Communal Ditch digging introduced
1942  Amukura Market was started – Northern Division
1942  Kedereyo and Osembo Famine – Southern Division
1944  (Eliud Mathew) – First African Member of Legco
1945  End of 2nd World War – District
1946  Dini ya Musambwa emerged  
1947  Amukura Mission – Northern Division  
1948  Eclipse of the sun  
1950  Leprosy Hospital was built at Alupe Norther Division  
1952  Emergency declared in Kenya – District Chief Alexander Papa was appointed – Northern Division  
1953  Queen’s visit to Kenya  
1955  E.A Trank Road and Kocholia Bridge was built – Northern Divion  
1956  Bungoma A.D.C. was separated from Kakamega District  
1956  Amukura Court was built – Northern Division  
1957  Installation of Kenya Survey beacons – Northern Division  
1959  Locational boundary dispute i.e. Bukusu, Bukhayo and Teso. Spilt of Teso into two locations

1961  Separation of North and South Teso. Teso Local Council Accounts –Northern Division  
1962  His Excellency Mzee Jome Kenyatta addressed a big rally at Malaba – South Teso  
1963  Madaraka Jamhuri celebrations, children born were named Uhuru, Buhuru  
1964  Separation of Busia from Bungoma District  
1966  Maize and Produce Board Store at Malaba was built.  
1967  Police Boarder Control built at Malaba and Busia  
1968  Land Registration started in South Teso  
1968  Maema Floods – Government supplied tents of flood victims Bunyala  
1970  Death of Ojamaa Ojaamong M.P District National Assembly by Election –Amagoro Division  
1971  Change to Military Government in Uganda National Start of Land Registrationin Bunyala Location  
1972  Opening of Divisional Head quarters Amagoro – Amagoro Division Planting of Trees – Samia Hills Hakati  
1973  10th Anniversary Jamuhuri Celebration – Children Named Jamhuri)  
1973  Eclipse of the sun June  
1974  Free Primary Education No.  
1975  Cholera outbreak; Floods in Bunyala, introduction of tobacco cash crop – Amagoro  
1976  Army work, coffee business  
1977  Heavy rains, flood in Bunyala

**BUTERE /MUMIAS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Event</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1901</td>
<td>Railway Construction at Kisumu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1902</td>
<td>Chief Murunga rules Busia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1903</td>
<td>Hut Tax</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1904</td>
<td>Famine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1905</td>
<td>Matungu Camp was built, Missionary Society started a Mission at Bukambuli</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1906</td>
<td>Nyabola Rinderpest plague</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1907-8</td>
<td>Great famine Choka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1908</td>
<td>Famine/Temesi/Amutsa/Obande</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1909</td>
<td>Railway Line reached Butere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1912</td>
<td>Chicken Pox and small pox</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1913</td>
<td>Famine – KEYA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1914-18</td>
<td>First World War</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1916</td>
<td>Odera Okong’s reign</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1917</td>
<td>Inindu disease – small pox</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Year</td>
<td>Event</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1918</td>
<td>Transfer of administrative headquarters from Mumias to Kakamega</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1921</td>
<td>Governor awards medals to Mumia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1922</td>
<td>Death of Chief Kumaruti Mumia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1923</td>
<td>Batsotso obtained independence from Wanga Kingdom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1924</td>
<td>Church of God Mission started at Mwihila</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1924-25</td>
<td>Start of Local Native Council. Rinmderpest Cattle disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1926</td>
<td>Earthquake</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1929</td>
<td>Rush for Gold in Kakamega</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1931</td>
<td>Railway line reached Yala town</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1932</td>
<td>Famine called Nyanweso – Tsisiche, (Locusts)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1934</td>
<td>Mango priest was killed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1935</td>
<td>Start of African Court at Kwisero;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1938</td>
<td>2nd World War starts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1943</td>
<td>Esikombe/Shkobe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1945</td>
<td>End of World War</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1946</td>
<td>Dini Ya Musambwa emerged</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1949</td>
<td>Death of paramount Chief Mumia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1953</td>
<td>Famine Mau Mau</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1955</td>
<td>Mwihila Mission was opened</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1956</td>
<td>Division of North Nyanza/Elgon Nyanza</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1960</td>
<td>Sub-Chiefs are appointed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1961</td>
<td>The Big Rain – Army Worm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1962</td>
<td>Population Census of Kenya gained Independence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1963</td>
<td>Kenya gained Independence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1964</td>
<td>Kenya became a Republic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1965</td>
<td>Famine – Yellow maize</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1968</td>
<td>Angola-Musumbi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1971</td>
<td>Famine – Kilo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1972-3</td>
<td>War between Kisa and Bunyore</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1979-80</td>
<td>Gorogoro famine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1983</td>
<td>Kwisero Division was created</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1972</td>
<td>Saba Lulala Famine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1996</td>
<td>Diffuser Tunders installed in Mumias Sugar Company</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1996</td>
<td>Creation of Kwisero Constituency from Butere and Matungu Constituency from vast Mumias</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1997</td>
<td>Elnino Rains</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1997</td>
<td>Creation of Butere/Mumias District from Kakamega.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**KAKAMEGA**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Event</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1906</td>
<td>Catholic Mission at Mukum by Friends Mission at Lirhanda</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1907</td>
<td>Temesi/Amutsa/Obande famine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1908-09</td>
<td>Appointment of Chiefs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1914-18</td>
<td>First World War. The K.A.R. famine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1919-26</td>
<td>Administration Headquarters from Mumias to Kakamega</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1922</td>
<td>Death of Chief Kumaruti Mumia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1924-25</td>
<td>Start of local Native Councils</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1927</td>
<td>Death of Governor of Kenya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1929-31</td>
<td>Gold mining in Kakamega</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1931-32</td>
<td>Locusts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1937</td>
<td>Native Tribunal Courts began</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1939-45</td>
<td>Second World War</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

119
1939  Chief Milimu appointed in Isukha Location, Locust famine (Tsisiche)
1943  Shikombe famine
1944  The first African Legico member Mr. Eliud Mathu
1945  First aeroplane toured Kenya. Children born at this time were called Indeche
1946  Appointment of Chief Segero
1947  Inundu (chicken pox)
1948  Namingg of Dini ya Musambwa led by Elijah Masinde
1949  Deat of Chief Mumia
1950  Nairobi becomes a city
1952  The visit of Princess Elizabeth and the death of King George VI; Coronation
1953  Mau Mau famine
1955  The death of Lesile D.C of Nyanza
1955-56 Coffee Experimental in North Nyanza
1959  The visits of Princess Margaret and the Queen’s mother Elizabeth
1960  Sub-Chiefs new system in Administration
1961  The big rain, Arm Worm, the release of Mzee Jomo Kenyatta
1962  Population Census, invasion of army worms
1963  Kenya gained Independence
1964  Kenya became a Republic
1965  Cassava famine, yellow maize
1966  Abolition of African Courts and establishments of district courts
1968  Country and Urban Councilors nomination
1969  Population Census
1978  First President of Kenya died and Moi took over
1980  Yellow maize famine (shipindi)
1966  Omukolongolo
1997  El Nino rains

**VIHIGA**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Event</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1900</td>
<td>Lulolo Lubwoni Age group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1902</td>
<td>Arrival of Friends Missionaries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1907</td>
<td>Demesi famine Appointment of Chiefs and Headmen Kijedi/lumiri age group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1913</td>
<td>Imbalabala/Logochi Age Group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1914-18</td>
<td>First World War</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1920</td>
<td>Imbalala/Munane/Kinangoli Age Group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1924-25</td>
<td>Native Councils</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1929-31</td>
<td>Gold mining in Kakakamega</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1931-32</td>
<td>Locusts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1932</td>
<td>Isigi Age Group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1938</td>
<td>Lizuliza Age Group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1939-45</td>
<td>Second World War</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1943</td>
<td>Shikombe famine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1946</td>
<td>Nzelolele Age Group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1950</td>
<td>Nairobi elevated to a city</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1952</td>
<td>Mau Mau</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1952-53</td>
<td>Silula Age Group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1955-56</td>
<td>Introduction of coffee in Maragoli</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1960</td>
<td>Sub Chiefs new system in administration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1960</td>
<td>Vovoholole/Ifumo Age Group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1961</td>
<td>Big rain; Arm Worm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1962</td>
<td>Population Census</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1963</td>
<td>Kenya gained Independence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Year</td>
<td>Event</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1964</td>
<td>Kenya became a Republic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1965</td>
<td>Yellow maize from America</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1967</td>
<td>Hybrid Maize</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1968</td>
<td>Hybrid Age Group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1969</td>
<td>Death of Tom Mboya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1969</td>
<td>Population Census</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1974</td>
<td>Free Primary Education</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1975</td>
<td>Kilo Age Group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1979</td>
<td>Population Census; Provision of milk in primary schools</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1980</td>
<td>Gologolo famine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1983</td>
<td>Nyayo Age Group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1989</td>
<td>Population Census</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1991</td>
<td>Advent of Multi party</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1992</td>
<td>Creation of Vihga District</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1992</td>
<td>Multi-party Elections</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1998</td>
<td>El Nino Rains</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Appendix IV
Measuring of Children
Appendix V
Kenya National Occupational Classification Standard (KNOCS)

MAJOR GROUP 1: LEGISLATORS, ADMINISTRATORS AND MANAGERS

110: Legislators and Constitutional Officials
111: Legislative and Constitutional Officials
112: Local Authority Officials

120: Administrators and Senior Officials of Special Interest Organizations
121: Government Administrators
122: Senior Officials of Special Interest Organizations

130: Corporate Managers
131: Directors and Chief Executives
132: Specialized Departmental Managers
133 Other Departmental Managers

140: Non-Departmental Managers
141:Non-departmental Managers

150: Other Administrators and Managers
151: Other Administrators and Managers

MAJOR GROUP 2: PROFESSIONALS

210: Physical Science Professionals
211: Physicists and Related Professionals
212: Chemists

220: Mathematicians, Statisticians and Computing Professionals
221: Mathematicians and Related Professionals
222: Statisticians
223: Computing Professionals

230: Engineering Science Professionals
231: Architects and Town Planners
232: Surveyors and Cartographers
233: Civil Engineers
234: Mechanical Engineers
235: Chemical Engineers and Technologists
236: Mining Engineers, Metallurgists and Related Technologists
237: Electrical, Electronics and Telecommunications Engineers
238: Production and Related Engineers

240: Health and Life Science Professionals
241: Health Professionals
242: Nursing and Mid-wifely Professionals
243: Life Science Professionals
244: Agriculturalists and Related Professionals

250: Teaching Professionals
251: University and Post-secondary Teachers/Lecturers
252: Secondary and Technical Institute Teachers and Instructors
253: Special Education Teaching Professionals
254: Education Methods Advisers and Assessors
259: Other Teaching Professionals

260: Legal Professionals
261: Lawyers
262: Jurists/Judges

270: Social Science and Related Professionals
271: Economists
272: Psychologists
273: Sociologists, Anthropologists and Related Professionals
274: Historians and Political Scientists
275: Philologists, Translators and Interpreters
279: Other Social Science and Related Professionals

280: Business Professionals
281: Accountants, Auditors and Tax Assessors
282: Personnel and Occupational Professionals
289: Other Business Professionals

290: Other Professionals
291: Archivists, Librarians, and Related Professionals
292: Religious Professionals
293: Authors, Journalists and Related Professionals
294: Sculptors, Painters and Related Professionals
295: Composers, Musicians and Singers
296: Choreographers

MAJOR GROUP 3: TECHNICIANS AND ASSOCIATE PROFESSIONALS

310: Engineering Technicians
311: Technical Draughts-men
312: Civil Engineering and Related Technicians
313: Mechanical Engineering and Related Technicians
314: Mining and Metallurgical Technicians
315: Electrical Engineering Technicians
316: Electronics and Telecommunications Engineering Technicians
317: Chemical Engineering Technicians
318: Photographers, Image and Sound Recording Equipment Controllers
319: Broadcasting and Telecommunications Equipment Controllers

320: Medical and Health Science Associate Professionals
321: Auxiliary Nurses
322: Medical/Clinical Officers
323: Sanitarians
324: Optometrists and Opticians
325: Dental Technicians
326: Physiotherapists and Related Associate Professionals
327: Veterinary Officers
328: Pharmaceutical Officers
329: Other Associate Medical, Nursing and Nutrition Workers

330: Physical and Life Science Technicians
331: Physical Science Technicians
332: Life Science Technicians
333: Agronomy and Forestry Technicians
334: Farming and Forestry Advisors

340: Farming Advisors
341: Ships Engineer
342: Ships Deck Officers and Pilots
343: Aircraft Pilots and Related Workers
344: Air Traffic Controller

350: Business and Social Services Associate Professionals
351: Securities and Finance Dealers
352: Insurance Brokers and Agents
353: Real Estate Agents
354: Business Service Agents
355: Buyers, Appraisers Auctioneers

360: Administration and Middle Level Personnel
361: Police Inspectors, Detectives, Customs and Border Officials
362: Government Tax and Excise Officials
363: Welfare and Pension Officials
364: Government Licensing Officials
365: Business and Public Service Middle Level Personnel
366: Statistical and Planning Officials
367: Fisheries, Wildlife and Tourist Officials
368: Lands, Agricultural and Livestock Officials
369: Other Middle Level Personnel

370: Primary and Pre-primary education and Other Teachers
371: Primary Education Teachers
372: Pre-primary Education Teachers
373: Other Teachers and Instructors

390: Other Business, Social Services, Athletics, Sports and Related Workers
391: Non-ordained Religion Assistants
392: Social Advisers and Helpers
393: Athletes, Sportsmen and Related workers
394: Decorators and Other Commercial Workers
395: Radio, Television and Other Announcers
396: Street, Nightclub and Related Musicians
397: Acrobats, Clowns, Magicians and Related Workers
398: Safety, Health and Quality Inspector /Controllers
399: Mechanical, Electrical, Building and Fire Inspectors

MAJOR GROUP 4: SECRETARIAL, CLERICAL SERVICES AND RELATED WORKERS

410: Secretaries and Office Clerks
411: Secretaries Stenographers and Typists
412: Office Machine Operators
413: Numerical Clerks
414: Material Recording and Transport Clerks
415: Library, Mail and Related Clerks
416: Coding, Proofreading and Related Clerks
417: General Office Clerks

420: Client Oriented Clerks
411: Cashiers, Tellers and Related Clerks
422: Information Clerks
423: Other Client Oriented Clerks

MAJOR GROUP 5: SERVICE WORKERS, SHOP AND MARKET SALES WORKERS
510: Models, Shop Assistants and Demonstrators
511: Fashion and Other Models
512: Shop Assistants and Demonstrators

520: Personal and Protective Service Workers
521: Hairdressers, Barbers, Beauticians and Related Workers
522: Undertakers and Embalmers
523: Fortune Tellers, Astrologers and Related Workers
524: Protective Service Workers

530: House Stewards, Caterers, Waiters and Related Workers
531: House Stewards and Housekeepers
532: Cooks and Other Catering Service Workers
533: Waiters Bartenders

540: Travel Attendants and Guides
541: Ship and Flight Attendants and Travel Stewards
542: Transport Conductors
543: Travel Guides and Ground Attendants

MAJOR GROUP 6: SKILLED FARM, FISHERY, WILDLIFE AND RELATED WORKERS

610: Farm Workers (except fish)
611: Field Crop, Vegetable and Horticultural Farm Workers
612: Poultry, Dairy and Livestock Producers
613:Crop and Animal Producers

620: Fishery and Related Workers
621: Fishery Workers

630: Subsistence Agricultural and Fishery Workers
631: Subsistence Agricultural and Fishery Workers

640: Forestry and Related Workers
641: Forestry and Related Workers

650: Hunting and Wildlife Workers
651: Hunting and Wildlife Workers
MAJOR GROUP 7: CRAFT AND RELATED TRADES WORKERS

710: Extraction and Building Trades Workers
711: Mining, blasting, Stone Cutting and Related Workers
712: Building Trades Workers

720: Metal, Machinery and Related Trades Workers
721: Metal Molders, Welders, Structural-metal Preparers and Related Trades Workers
722: Blacksmiths, Toolmakers and Related Trades workers
723: Machinery Mechanics and Fitters
724: Electrical Equipment Fitters and Installers
725: Electrical Equipment Fitters and Services
726: Electrical Linesmen and Cable Jointers
727: Solar Equipment Fitters and Installers

730: Precision and Handicraft Workers
731: Precision Workers in Metal and Related Materials
732: Potters, Glassmakers and Related Trades Workers
733: Handicraft Workers

740: Printing and Related Trades Workers
741: Compositors and Typesetters
742: Stereotypes and Electrotypers
743: Printing Engravers and Etchers
744: Photographic and Related Workers
745: Bookbinders and Related Workers
746: Silk-screen, Block and Textile Printers

750: Food Processing and Related Trades
751: Butchers, Fishmongers and Related Food Preparers
752: Bakers, Pastry-cooks and Confectionery Makers
753: Dairy Products Makers
754: Fruit, Nut and Related Preservers
755: Tobacco Preparers and Tobacco Products Makers
756: Food and Beverage Tasters
757: Brewers, Distillers and Related Workers
758: Other Food Processing and Related Workers

760: Woodworking Trades Workers
761: Wood Treating, Cabinetmaking and Related Trades Workers
762: Woodworking-machine Setters and Setter-operators

770: Textile, Garment and Related Trades
771: Fibre Preparers
772: Weavers, Knitters and Related Workers
773: Tailors, Dressmakers and Related Workers

780: Upholsterers, Pelt, Leather and Shoemaking Trades Workers
781: Upholsters
782: Fell mongers, Tanners and Pelt Dressers
783: Shoe-making and Related Trades Workers

MAJOR GROUP 8: PLANT AND MACHINE OPERATORS AND ASSEMBLERS
810: Drilling and Mining Plant and Mineral Products Machine Operators
811: Well Drillers and Borers
812: Mining Plant Operators
813: Stone, Clay, Cement and Other Mineral Products Machine Operators

820: Metal Processing Plant and Metal Working Machine Operators
821: Metal Smelting, Converting and Refining Furnace Operators
822: Metal Melters, Casters and Rolling Mill Operators
823: Metal Heat-treating Plant Operators, Metal Drawers and Extruders
824: Machine -Tool and Other Metal-Working Machine Operators
825: Metal Finishing, Plating and Coating Machine Operators

831: Wood Processing and Paper Pulp Plant Operators
832: Wood Products Machine Operators
833: Printing and Binding Machine Operators
834: Paper Products Machine Operators
835: Rubber and Plastic Rubber Machine Operators

840: Chemical-Processing Plant and Chemical Products Machine Operators
841: Chemical Crushing, Grinding and Mixing Machine Operators
842: Chemical Heat-treating and Plant Operators
843: Filtering and Separation Equipment Operators
844: Chemical Still and Reactor Operators
845: Petroleum Refining Plant Operators
846: Pharmaceutical and Toiletry Products Machine Operators
849: Other Chemical Processing Plant and Machinery Operators

850: Power Production Plant Operators
851: Power Generating Plant Operators
852: Steam Turbine boiler and Engine Operators

860: Food and Related Products Machine Operators
861: Meat and Fish Processing Machine Operators
862: Dairy Products and Machine Operators
863: Grain and Spice-milling Machine Operators
864: Baked Goods, Cereal and Chocolate Products Machine Operators
865: Fruit, Vegetable and Nut Processing Machine Operators
866: Sugar Production Machine Operators
867: Tea, Coffee and Cocoa Processing Machine Operators
868: Brewers, Wine and Other Beverage Machine Operators
869: Tobacco Production Machine Operators

870: Assemblers
871: Mechanical Machinery Assemblers
872: Electrical and Electronic Machinery Assemblers
873: Metal Products Assemblers
874: Plastic and Rubber Products Assemblers
875: Wood, Paperboard and Related Products Assemblers
876: Textile and Leather Products Assemblers
880: Drivers and Mobile Machinery Operators
881: Railway Engine Drivers and Related Workers
882: Motor Vehicle Drivers
883: Agricultural and Materials-handling Machinery Operators
884: Ships' Deck Crews and Related Workers

890: Other Plant and Machine Operators and Assemblers
891: Glass and Ceramics Kiln and Related Plant Operators
892: Textile Preparing, Spinning and Winding Machine Operators
893: Weaving, Knitting and Sewing Machine Operators
894: Textile Bleaching, Dyeing and Cleaning Machine Operators
895: Fur and Leather Preparing Machine Operators
896: Shoemaking and Related Machine Operators
899: Plant and Machine Operators and Assemblers not Elsewhere Classified

MAJOR GROUP 9: ELEMENTARY OCCUPATIONS

910: Sales and Services Elementary Occupations
911: Street Vendors and Related Workers
912: Shoe Cleaning and Other Street Services Elementary Occupations
913: Cleaners, Launderers and Domestic Workers
914: Building Caretakers
915: Messengers, Porters, Watchmen and Related Workers
916: Other Sales and Service Labourers

920: Agricultural, Fishery and Related Labourers
921: Farm- hands and Related Labourers
922: Forestry Labourers
923: Fishery, Hunting and Trapping Labourers

930: Labourers in Mining, Construction, Manufacturing and Transport
931: Mining and Quarrying Labourers
932: Construction and Maintenance Labourers
933: Manufacturing Labourers
934: Transport Labourers and Freight Handlers

MAJOR GROUP 10: ARMED FORCES

010: Armed Forces
011: Armed Forces
# Appendix VI
## Classification Codes (ISIC REV III)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td><strong>AGRICULTURE AND FORESTRY</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1111</td>
<td>Coffee plantations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1112</td>
<td>Tea plantations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1113</td>
<td>Sugar plantations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1114</td>
<td>Sisal plantations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1115</td>
<td>Mixed farming</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1116</td>
<td>Ranches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1117</td>
<td>Other agricultural activities n.e.c.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1119</td>
<td>Processing co-operatives of small farms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1120</td>
<td>Agricultural services</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1130</td>
<td>Hunting, trapping and game propagation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1211</td>
<td>Forestry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1212</td>
<td>Charcoal burning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1220</td>
<td>Logging</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1301</td>
<td>Ocean and coastal fishing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1302</td>
<td>Inland water fishing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td><strong>MINING AND QUARRYING</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2901</td>
<td>Stone quarrying, clay and sand pits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2902</td>
<td>Chemical and fertilizer mineral mining</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2909</td>
<td>Mining and quarrying n.e.c.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td><strong>MANUFACTURING</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3111</td>
<td>Slaughtering, preparing and preserving of meat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3112</td>
<td>Manufacture of dairy products</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3113</td>
<td>Canning and preserving of fruits and vegetables</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3114</td>
<td>Canning, preserving and processing of fish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3115</td>
<td>Manufacture of vegetable and animal oils and fats</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3116</td>
<td>Grain mill products</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3117</td>
<td>Manufacture of bakery products</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3118</td>
<td>Sugar factories and refineries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3119</td>
<td>Manufacture of cocoa, chocolate and sugar confectioneries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3121</td>
<td>Manufacture of food products n.e.c.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3122</td>
<td>Manufacture of prepared animal feeds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3131</td>
<td>Spirits, beer and tobacco</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3134</td>
<td>Soft drinks and carbonated waters industries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3210</td>
<td>Cotton ginneries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3211</td>
<td>Spinning, weaving and finishing textiles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3212</td>
<td>Manufacture of made-up textile goods except wearing apparel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3213</td>
<td>Knitting mills</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3215</td>
<td>Cordage, rope and twine industries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3219</td>
<td>Manufacture of textiles n.e.c.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3220</td>
<td>Manufacture of wearing apparel, except footwear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3231</td>
<td>Tanneries and leather finishing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3233</td>
<td>Manufacture of products of leather, except footwear and wearing apparel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3240</td>
<td>Manufacture of footwear, except plastic footwear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3311</td>
<td>Sawmills, planning and other wood mills</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3312</td>
<td>Manufacture of wooden and cane containers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3319</td>
<td>Manufacture of wood and cork products n.e.c.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Manufacture of furniture and fixtures, except primarily of metal or plastic
3411 Manufacture of pulp, paper and paperboard
3419 Manufacture of pulp, paper and paperboard articles n.e.c.
3420 Printing, publishing and allied industries
3511 Manufacture of basic industrial chemicals, except fertilizers
3512 Pyrethrum extraction
3521 Manufacture of paints, varnishes and lacquers
3522 Manufacture of drugs and medicines
3523 Manufacture of soap and cleaning preparations, perfumes, cosmetics
3529 Manufacture of chemical products n.e.c.
3530 Petroleum refineries
3550 Manufacture of rubber products
3560 Manufacture of plastic products
3610 Manufacture of pottery, china and earthenware
3620 Manufacture of glass and glass products
3699 Manufacture of non-metallic mineral products n.e.c.
3700 Basic metal industries
3811 Manufacture of cutlery, hand tools and general hardware
3812 Manufacture of furniture and fixtures, primarily of metal
3819 Manufacture of fabricated metal products, except machinery and equipment n.e.c.
3820 Manufacture of machinery except electrical
3830 Manufacture of electrical machinery and appliances
3841 Ship building and repairing
3843 Manufacture and assembly of motor vehicles
3844 Manufacture and assembly of motorcycles and bicycles
3845 Manufacture and repair of aircraft
3850 Manufacture of professional and scientific equipment photographic and optical goods
3900 Other manufacturing industries

4 ELECTRICITY AND WATER
4101 Electric light and power
4200 Water works and supply

5 CONSTRUCTION
5101 Electrical contractors
5102 Plumbers
5103 Structural steel erectors
5104 Painters, roof-tilers and minor repairs
5105 Borehole drilling
5201 Construction of buildings
5202 All other construction

6 WHOLESALE AND RETAIL TRADE, RESTAURANTS AND HOTELS
6000 Joint wholesale and retail trade
6001 Motor vehicles
6002 Non-electric machinery and appliances
6003 Electrical machinery and appliances
61 Wholesale trade
6110 Food, drink and tobacco
6111 Agricultural produce
6112 Oil and petrol
6113 Textiles, soft furnishings, clothing and shoes
6114 Building materials, hardware and timber
6115 Domestic hardware
6116 Photographic and pharmaceutical goods
6117 Engineering products, scrap, industrial and agricultural chemicals, seeds, e.t.c.
6118 General wholesale
6119 Wholesale n.e.c.
62 Retail Trade
6211 Food, drink and tobacco
6212 Butcheries
6213 Oil and petrol
6214 Textiles, soft furnishings, clothing and shoes
6215 Building materials, timber, and domestic hardware
6216 Photographic and pharmaceutical goods
6217 General Retail Trade
6218 Retail n.e.c.
6310 Restaurants, cafes and other eating and drinking places
6320 Hotels, rooming houses, camps and other lodging places
7 TRANSPORT AND COMMUNICATIONS
7110 K.R. Central administration
7111 Railway transport
7112 Urban, sub-urban and inter-urban highway passenger transport
7113 Other passenger land transport
7114 Freight transport by road
7115 Pipeline transport
7116 Supporting services to land transport
7121 Ocean and coastal water transport
7122 Inland water transport
7123 Supporting services to water transport
7131 Air transport carriers including aircraft rental
7132 Supporting services to air transport
7190 Booking and travel agencies
7191 Services incidental to transport n.e.c.
7192 Storage and warehousing
7200 Communications
7201 K.P. & T. administrative services
8 Finance, Insurance, Real Estate and Business Services
8101 Monetary institutions
8102 Other financial institutions, except holding companies
8103 Financial services
8104 Holding companies
8201 Insurance companies
8202 Other insurance
8311 Property companies
8312 House and estate agents
8321 Legal services
8322 Accounting, auditing and book-keeping services
8323 Data processing and tabulating services
8324 Engineering, architectural and technical services
8325 Advertising services
Business services, except machinery and equipment rental and leasing

8329  Machinery and equipment rental and leasing

COMMUNITY AND SOCIAL SERVICES

9  Government services

9101  Law and order

9102  Defence

9103  Other public administration

9310  Education services

9320  Research and scientific institutes

9330  Medical, dental and other health services

9332  Veterinary services

9340  Welfare institutions

9350  Business, professional and labour associations

9391  Religious organizations

9399  Social and related community services n.e.c.

9410  Motion pictures and other entertainment services

9420  Libraries, museums, botanical and zoological gardens and other cultural services n.e.c.

9430  Pleasure boat hire

9491  Other amusement and recreational services n.e.c.

9511  Repair of footwear and other leather goods

9512  Electrical repair shops

9513  Repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles

9514  Watch, clock and jewellry repair

9519  Other repair shops n.e.c.

9520  Laundries, laundry services and cleaning and dyeing plants

9530  Domestic services

9591  Barber and beauty shops

9592  Photographic studios including commercial photography

9593  Hunting and tourist guide services

9599  Personal services n.e.c.

9600  International and other extra-territorial bodies

0000  Activities not adequately defined